

GUIDE

CONNECT

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى

الفصل الدراسى الثانى

طبعة جديدة

طبقاً لأحدث تعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤

GPS

تطبيق التعلم التفاعلى

DESERT

DESERT ANIM

4th Primary 2024

SECOND TERM

Parents' Guide

دليل ولى الأمر

Contents

Theme 3 My society



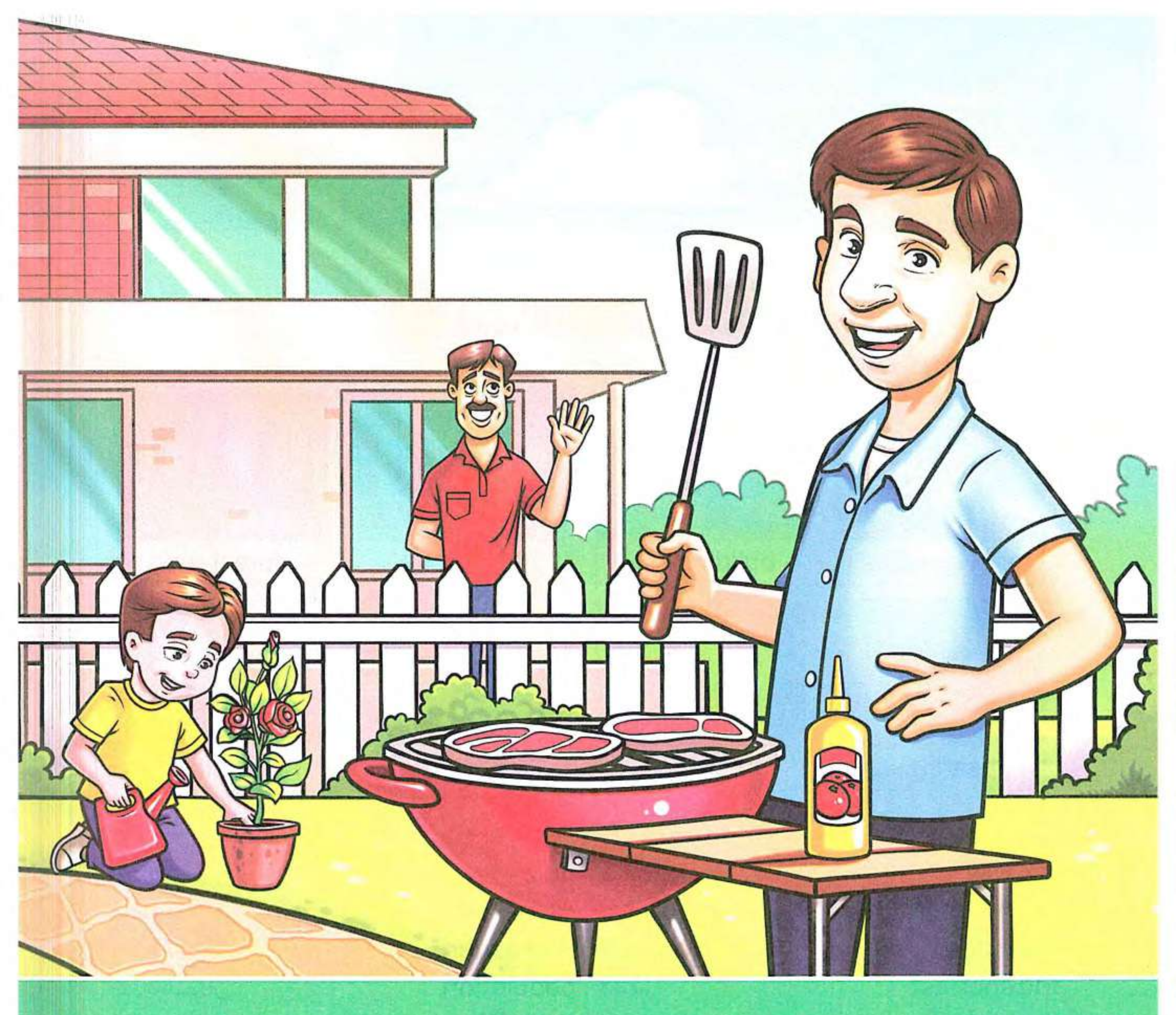
Theme 4 I'm a responsible person





THEME

My society



Unit 7 This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذى أعيش فيه

Aims of Unit seven : الأهداف العامة للوحدة السابعة :

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read about the Nile and why it is so important.
  - اقرأ عن نهر النيل وما مدى أهميته.
- talk about my neighborhood in the past and now.
  - أتحدث عن الحى الذى أسكن فيه فى الماضى والآن.
- use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
  - استخدم الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط.
- practice the long vowel sounds.
  - أتدرب على أصوات الحروف المتحركة الممدودة.
- practice simplifying fractions.
  - أتدرب على تبسيط الكسور.
- write about a memory.
  - اكتب عن ذكرى.

Lesson 1 ‣ The Nile



I Vocabulary

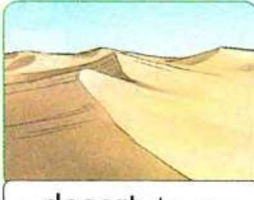
Key vocabulary


city مدينة كبيرة

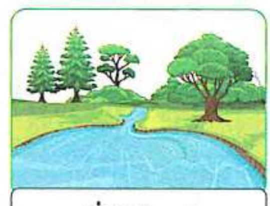

building مبنى

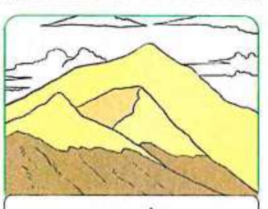

village قرية


forest غابة


desert صحراء


oasis واحة


river نهر


mountain جبل

Extra vocabulary

the Nile	نهر النيل	quiz	اختبار قصير
the Amazon	نهر الأمازون	capital	عاصمة
the longest	الأطول	interesting	ممتع / شيق
the shortest	الأقصر	population	تعداد السكان
the widest	الأكثر اتساعًا	branch	فرع
human	إنسان	turtle	سلحفاة
reptiles	زواحف	crocodile	تمساح
planet	كوكب	home	موطن
Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	Australia	استراليا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
travel to	يسافر / ينتقل إلى	traveled to
guess	يخمن	guessed
try	يجرب / يحاول	tried
check	يفحص / يختبر	checked
decide	يقرر	decided

Irregular

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew
do	يفعل	did
bring	يجلب	brought
think	يعتقد	thought

Did you know ?
- The World Capital of Cats in Romania has a cat population that is four times larger than the human population.

العاصمة العالمية للقطط فى رومانيا بها عدد من القطط أكبر بأربع مرات من عدد سكان البشر.

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• the center of the earth	مركز الأرض	• the whole of Egypt	جميع أنحاء مصر
• That sounds like ...	هذا يبدو / مثل ...	• I'm not sure	لست متأكدًا
• come on	هيا - تعالى	• Of course.	بالطبع.
• Let's + inf.	هيا + مصدر الفعل	• How many ... ?	كم عدد ... ؟
• home for	مأوى لـ		

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
The Nile	longest-world	- The Nile is the longest river in the world.
	long - traveling	- The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth.
	branches	- The Nile has two branches in Egypt.
	kinds - turtles	- The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles.
	reptiles - lives	- One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in the Nile.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. There are a lot of trees, animals and plants in the ....
   a. sky b. moon c. forests d. mountains
2. The .... is a very hot, dry place.
   a. desert b. sea c. river d. Nile
3. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
   a. capital b. town c. moon d. forest
4. The crocodile is a ....
   a. bird b. fruit c. reptile d. human
5. Earth is the .... where we live.
   a. moon b. building c. planet d. plane
6. The .... of China is more than one billion people.
   a. capital b. population c. building d. branch

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



Let's do this quiz. لنقم بهذا الاختبار .



What's it about ? عن ماذا ؟





The Nile. النيل.



That sounds very interesting. هذا يبدو ممتعًا جدًا.



Of course. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try.
Question 1, which sentence is true ? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest or the widest river in the world ?

بالطبع. النيل يجلب الحياة لجميع أنحاء مصر. لا مصر بدون نهر النيل. هيا دعينا نجرب.
السؤال رقم ١، ما هى الجملة الصحيحة ؟ هل النيل هو أقصر، أطول أو أعرض نهر فى العالم ؟

Hmm, I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think ?
همم، لا أعلم. أظن أنه الأطول، ما رأيك ؟



Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose "b". Next question :
"The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon, or traveling to Australia ?

نعم، أعلم أن كلًا من نهر الأمازون والنيل طويل جدًا جدًا. دعينا نختار "b".
السؤال التالى : يبلغ طول النيل ٦,٦٧٠ كيلومترًا، فهل يشبه السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا ؟

Notes for parents

• Help your child listen to the dialog and let him/her say what he/she listens to correctly.

- ساعد طفلك فى الاستماع إلى المحادثة ودعه يقول ما يسمعه بطريقة صحيحة.



Maybe traveling to the center of the earth ?

ربما مثل الانتقال إلى مركز الأرض ؟



Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

همم، لست متأكدةً، هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين جيد.
رقم ٣، نحن بحاجة إلى إلقاء نظرة على الصور وتحديد أى نهر هو النيل.



I think it's "c".

أعتقد أنها "c".



Why ?

لماذا ؟



In "c" you can see The Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt !

فى "c" يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة، لذا فمن الواضح إنه فى مصر !



OK, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt ?

حسنًا، آخر سؤال. كم عدد فروع النيل فى مصر ؟



I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number. Erm, check on your phone.

سأقول ثلاثة، هذا يبدو عددًا جيدًا. تحققى منه عبر هاتفك.



OK, Aha! There are 2 branches!

حسنًا. نعم ! يوجد فرعين !

Did you know ?

- The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.
- نهر النيل موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف. يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف على كوكب الأرض، وهو تمساح النيل.



General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a. longest b. shortest c. widest d. smallest
2. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
3. The Nile is very ....
   a. ugly b. harmful c. useless d. important
4. The Nile .... life to the whole of Egypt.
   a. checks b. travels c. thinks d. brings

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest ....
   a. insects b. reptiles c. planets d. forests
2. The Nile is .... for different kinds of fish.
   a. home b. shock c. block d. apartment
3. That's a very high .... I can't climb it.
   a. river b. desert c. turtle d. mountain
4. How many .... does the Nile have ? - Two branches.
   a. streets b. lakes c. branches d. animals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

shortest - clean - important - earth - longest

Farmers grow crops near the river. The Nile is the (1) .... river in the world. It's 6,670 km long. That's like traveling to the center of the (2) .... It's very (3) .... for people's lives. We must keep the River Nile (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. It brings life to Egypt. There're many people living **near** the Nile. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile is home for different

kinds of fish, birds and turtles. The Nile crocodile lives in it. It helps farmers to grow many crops for people to eat. It gives us water to drink, cook and have showers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is " .... ".
   a. The Pyramids b. The Nile c. The schools d. The festivals
2. The underlined word "**near**" is the opposite of ....
   a. bad b. far c. good d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. What animals live in the Nile ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

what do you know about the Nile

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (١٨) ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

"The Nile"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

How many branches does the Nile have?	two branches
Why is it important ?	home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

- A short story about Grandpa
- Language focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

curious	فضولى/محب للاستطلاع	visitors	زوار
street	شارع	grandpa	جد
grass	عشب	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى
metal box	صندوق معدنى	village	قرية
truck	شاحنة / عربة نقل	digging	حفر

Extra vocabulary

excited	متحمس	road	طريق
quiet	هادئ	space	مساحة / فضاء
right	يمين	short story	قصة قصيرة
left	يسار	smile	ابتسامة / يبتسم
Colossi of Memnon	تمثالا ممنون		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتساءل	wondered
bury	يدفن	buried
walk	يسير	walked
start	يبدأ	started
pull	يسحب	pulled

Irregular

Present		Past
have / has	يملك	had
sit down	يجلس	sat down
feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found
dig	يحفر	dug

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- grow up ينمو / يكبر
- from all around the world من جميع أنحاء العالم
- inside the box بداخل الصندوق
- many years ago منذ عدة سنوات
- pull out يسحب

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Grandpa and his box of memories	visit - village	- We visited the village where my grandpa grew up.
	visitors - past	- Visitors visited grandpa's village in the past.
	football - street	- Grandpa played football with his friends in the street.
	dig - pulled out	- Grandpa started digging and pulled out an old metal box.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. He usually has a big .... on his face.
   a. space b. box c. smile d. homework
2. She asks her mother a lot of questions. She is ....
   a. curious b. bad c. sad d. ugly
3. He .... a metal box under the ground. No one could see it.
   a. pulled b. buried c. crossed d. washed
4. We .... the road together.
   a. crossed b. started c. looked d. planted
5. The air in grandpa's .... is cleaner than that of the city.
   a. library b. village c. sun d. sky
6. Many .... come to visit Egypt every year.
   a. streets b. roads c. visitors d. birds
7. We .... the soil to plant trees.
   a. cut b. sit c. jump d. dig

• Ask your child to choose the correct answer. - اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.



II Reading





Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

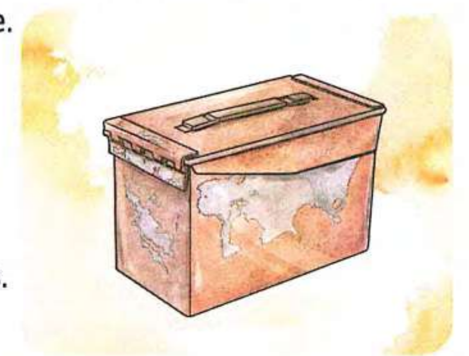
Grandpa and his box of memories



"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very **excited**. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon. "It was very **quiet** when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."

Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars.

"And this," he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago ..." Grandpa looked at the tree.



Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face. "Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we buried this. Let's sit down and look inside the box." "Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious !"

"انظروا، هذا الشارع الذى كنت أعيش به". كان جدى متحمسًا للغاية. كنا فى القرية التى كبر فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالى ممنون. قال الجد : "كان المكان هادئًا جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا. الآن، هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم. هذا هو المكان الذى عاش فيه صديقى. لعبنا كرة القدم فى هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات حينها. "نظر الجد يمينًا ويسارًا وعبر الطريق. كان الطريق مليئًا بالكثير من الشاحنات والسيارات. قال هو : "هنا المكان حيث عشت. نظرنا إلى الساحة. لم يكن هناك أى منزل. لم يكن هناك سوى عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. "همم، أتساءل. كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة..." نظر الجد إلى الشجرة. سار الجد إلى الشجرة. نظر إلى الأرض. ثم بدأ الحفر. قام بسحب صندوق معدنى قديم. كانت لديه ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه. قال : "انظروا !" كان متحمسًا جدًا. "كنا فى الثامنة من العمر عندما قمنا بدفن هذا. دعونا نجلس وننظر داخل الصندوق". قلت : "نعم، من فضلك، أنا فضولى للغاية !"

Demonstrate the meaning of words.
حدد معنى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**excited**" means very.................... .
a. sad b. busy c. happy d. angry

Practice 2. The underlined word "**quiet**" is the opposite of.................... .
a. cold b. noisy c. sunny d. hot

III Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage : الاستخدام

▶ We use the past simple tense to talk about finished actions or situations in the past.

◀ نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط عند التحدث عن أحداث أو مواقف منتهية فى الماضى.

1 Affirmative Statements

١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

(A) The Past Simple Tense with "Regular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال المنتظمة



Subject الفاعل + **regular verb** الفعل المنتظم + (ed) أو (d) أو (ied)

ed
تضاف لمعظم الأفعال المنتظمة.
watch → watched

d
تضاف لمعظم الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e).
change → changed

ied
تضاف للأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها (حرف ساكن) بعد حذف (y).
cry → cried

ex. – We played football in this park last week.

لَعبنا كرة القدم فى هذه الحديقة الاسبوع الماضى.

(B) The Past Simple Tense with "Irregular verbs"

زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل + باقى الجملة.

◀ التصريف الثانى للفعل غير المنتظم (يحفظ كما هو).

Present	Past
drink →	drank
am / is →	was
are →	were
has/ have →	had

Present	Past
win →	won
buy →	bought
go →	went
take →	took

ex.



We went on a trip last year.
(went: التصريف الثانى للفعل)



He took pictures yesterday.
(took: التصريف الثانى للفعل)

Time phrases : من العبارات الزمنية الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط

in the past	في الماضي
[فترة زمنية] + ago	منذ
yesterday	أمس
in + [2005]	في + [عام ماضي]



last +	
year	السنة الماضية
month	الشهر الماضى
week	الأسبوع الماضى
Tuesday	الثلاثاء الماضى

2 Negative Statements

٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It / They / You / We/ + **did not [didn't]** + مصدر الفعل **[inf.]** ....

ex. - She didn't go to the village.
- Shady didn't see the film.

3 Interrogative

٣. صيغة الاستفهام

Did + **subj.** الفاعل + مصدر الفعل **[inf.]** + باقى السؤال **?**

Short answers الإجابات المختصرة

Yes, + **subj.** الفاعل + **did.** عند الإثبات
No, + **subj.** الفاعل + **didn't.** عند النفى

ex. - Did you listen to music ?
- Yes, I did.
- Did she clean the room ?
- No, she didn't.

◄ لاحظ أن عند السؤال بـ "هل ... ؟» باستخدام [Did] يكون الفعل بعدها فى المصدر [inf.].
◄ عند تكوين السؤال المبدوء بكلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط نستخدم :

Question word كلمة استفهام + **did** + **subj.** الفاعل + مصدر الفعل **[inf.]** + باقى السؤال **?**

- Where did you go yesterday ?
- I went to the zoo yesterday.

[C] Verb [to be] in the Past Simple Tense فعل [يكون] فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Formation : التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements ١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + باقى الجملة.

They / You / We/ اسم جمع + were + باقى الجملة.

ex. - Rami was at the Pyramids yesterday.

- They were at the zoo last week.

2 Negative Statements ٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was not (wasn't) + باقى الجملة.

They / You / We / اسم جمع + were not (weren't) + باقى الجملة.

ex. - She wasn't at home two hours ago.

- We weren't at the museum last week.

3 Interrogative ٣. صيغة الاستفهام

Was / Were + subj. الفاعل + بقية السؤال ?

ex. - Was he at home ?

- Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.

Question word + was / were + subj. الفاعل + باقى السؤال ?

ex. - Where were your friends ?

- They were in the club.

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.
اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الاقواس.

1. Grandpa's village .... (be) very quiet in the past.
2. What .... (do) you do yesterday ?

3. There .... [be] no cars in the past.
4. I .... [live] here two years ago.
5. Were you in the class ? - Yes, I .... [be].
6. Did you .... [goes] by plane ?
7. Was the film good ? - Yes, it .... [were].
8. What did you .... [does] on your birthday ?
9. .... [Do] it snow last winter ?
10. Adel .... [paint] his room yesterday.
11. My mother .... [bakes] a cake last Sunday.
12. They .... [are] eight when they traveled to Luxor.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My grandfather .... us last Friday.
   a. visiting   b. visited   c. visits   d. visit
2. Esraa .... to school last week.
   a. walk   b. walking   c. walked   d. walks
3. My mom .... the kitchen yesterday.
   a. cleaned   b. cleaning   c. cleans   d. clean
4. Yesterday, I .... a really good weekend.
   a. has   b. had   c. have   d. having
5. My cat .... high last night.
   a. jump   b. jumped   c. jumping   d. jumps
6. .... you water the plants yesterday ?
   a. Was   b. Did   c. Do   d. Are
7. How did Omar .... when he found the box?
   a. felt   b. feel   c. feels   d. feeling

3 Write the past simple form of these verbs.

اكتب صيغة الماضي البسيط لهذه الأفعال.

1. bury ....   2. have ....   3. grow ....
4. travel ....   5. look ....   6. are ....
7. pull ....   8. is ....   9. talk ....

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I visited my Grandpa's .... last year.
   a. city b. village c. farm d. town
2. It was a quiet, and a .... place.
   a. bad b. boring c. beautiful d. sad
3. Grandpa's parents moved to this village when he was ....
   a. three b. two c. six d. five
4. He played .... near his home.
   a. basketball b. tennis c. volleyball d. football

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. Many years ago, my grandpa .... a metal box in the ground.
   a. crossed b. buried c. built d. walked
2. Many .... came to my village to see the Colossi of Memnon.
   a. vets b. visitors c. mechanics d. trucks
3. My cousin was very .... His father bought him a new bike.
   a. sad b. angry c. excited d. worried
4. You should be careful when you .... the road.
   a. cross b. wash c. read d. draw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

tree - visitors - road - quiet - cars

My grandpa lives in a village. Grandpa's village was very [1] .... Now, there are a lot of [2] .... There were no [3] .... in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars on the [4] ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

My father's house was in a village in Aswan. The street was **quiet** in the past. Now, there are lots of cars and trucks. My father and his friends played football on this street. Now, there isn't enough space. When my father was a child, he helped his friends to plant a small tree on the side of the street. Now, the tree is very big and beautiful. It's very nice.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word " **quiet**" is the opposite of ....

a. calm b. free c. empty d. noisy

2. My father helped his friends to .... a small tree when he was a child.

a. plant b. cut c. eat d. chop

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Where was the father's house ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. My mother .... [buy] new clothes last week.
2. My father .... [be] very busy yesterday.
3. We .... [visit] my grandpa last month.
4. Where did you .... [goes] last Tuesday ?

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

what did you do yesterday

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من [١٨] ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Your village in the past

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- How was your village in the past ?
- Were there many cars and trucks in the streets ?

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- A short story
- Pronunciation
- CLIL: Math



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

hole	فجوة / ثقب	city mouse	فأر المدينة
smoke	دخان	country mouse	فأر الريف
mice	فئران	moral	مغزى أخلاق / درس مستفاد

Extra vocabulary

seeds	بذور	value	قيمة
ground	أرض	noise	ضوضاء
voice	صوت	smells	روائح
reason	سبب / مبرر	situation	موقف
stars	نجوم	suddenly	فجأة

Adjectives الصفات

pleased	مسرور	pretty	جميل
delighted	سعيد / مبتهج	loud	عالٍ (الصوت)
bright	مشرق / لامع	exciting	مثير / رائع
scared	خائف		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular Present		Regular Past	Irregular Present		Irregular Past
wait	ينتظر	waited	give	يعطي	gave
cover	يغطي	covered	run away	يهرب	ran away
prepare	يجهز	prepared	come	يأتي	came

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• full of	مليئة بـ	• around the corner	حول الزاوية / الركن
• It's time for ...	حان الوقت لـ ...	• go back	يعود / يرجع
• incredibly loud	بصوت عالٍ جداً (صاخب)	• catch a train	يلحق بالقطار

Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

A moral is the value you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.

المغزى الأخلاقى [الدرس المستفاد] هى القيمة التى تتعلمها من قصة تقرأها أو من موقف فى الحياة.

There are three stages of the story
يوجد ثلاث مراحل للقصة



1 Beginning بداية	2 Middle منتصف	3 End نهاية
The city mouse visited the country mouse.	The two mice caught the train.	The country mouse went back to where life is good for him.

The moral of the story : Different people like different things.

- مغزى القصة : الأشخاص مختلفين وبالتالى يفضلون أشياء مختلفة.

II Listening and Reading

City Mouse and Country Mouse فأر المدينة وفأر الريف

The beginning



The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground.
The country mouse was pleased.
He gave his friend grass and seeds.
The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see ?"

زار فأر المدينة فأر الريف فى حفرته فى الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورًا. أعطى صديقه العشب والبذور. قال فأر المدينة ، "شكرًا لك. كما تعلم، المدينة جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة، فلماذا لا تأتى وترى ؟"

The middle

The country mouse was delighted and very **excited**[1]. The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no **reason**[2] to wait. We can catch a train at eight."
The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain. In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the **noise**[3] was incredibly loud. The country mouse was **scared**[4]. He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.

[1] متحمس
[2] سبب
[3] ضوضاء
[4] خائف
[5] فجأة
[6] يعود

The end

Suddenly[5], a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread." "Run, run, run," said the city mouse. They ran around the corner. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to **go back**[6] to the country and back to where life is good for me."



Remember :



Irregular Plural Nouns صيغة الجمع الغير منتظم

- There are many irregular plural nouns that are learnt as they are.
هناك بعض الأسماء الجمع الغير منتظمة والتى نتعلمها كما هى.

ex.



• Help your child to learn some irregular plural nouns.
- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم بعض أسماء الجمع الغير منتظم.

كان فأر الريف مسرورًا ومتحمساً للغاية. توقف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال : "ليس هناك سبب للانتظار. يمكننا اللحاق بقطار الساعة الثامنة". ركض الصديقان إلى القطار عندما بدأ المطر يهطل. فى المدينة، غطى دخان السيارات النجوم وكانت الضوضاء عالية بشكل لا يصدق. كان فأر الريف خائفًا. لم يكن مستعدًا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال صوت قطة : "هممم، فأران وبعض الخبز. قال فأر المدينة : "أركض، أركض، أركض." ركضوا حول الزاوية. قال فأر الريف: "شكرًا لك يا صديقى، المدينة مثيرة، ولكن حان الوقت لعودتى إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون الحياة جيدة بالنسبة لى".

IV Pronunciation

The long vowel sounds. الأصوات المتحركة الممدودة.

/ei/		/i:/		/ai/		/ou/	
rain	مطر	see	يرى	mice	فئران	no	لا
wait	ينتظر	eat	يأكل	my	ملكى	go	يذهب
train	قطار	me	أنا (ضمير متكلم مفعول مباشر)	excited	متحمس	know	يعرف
eight	رقم ثمانية	seed	بذرة	light	مصباح / ضوء	smoke	دخان
gave	أعطى	pleased	مسرور	time	وقت	hole	ثقب / فجوة
				bright	لامع		
				delighted	مسرور		
				life	حياة		



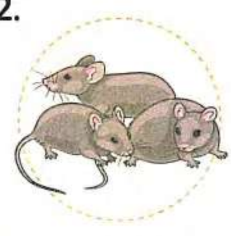
Pop Quiz on Phonics

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write the missing sound. استمع واكتب الصوت الناقص.

1. 

r – – n

2. 

m – c –

3. 

l – – – t

4. 

s – –

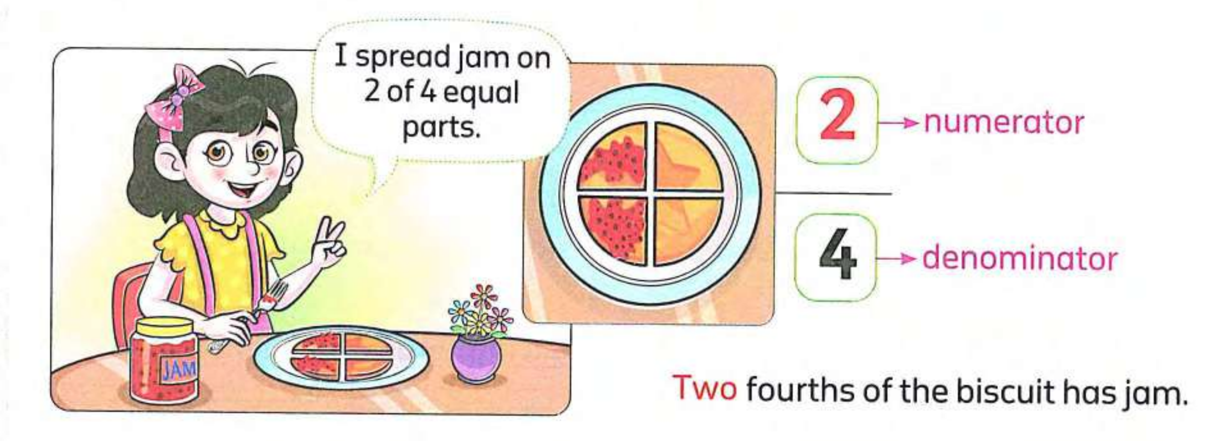
2 Read and circle the words with long vowel sounds.

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمات التى بها أصوات متحركة ممدودة.

1. W(ai)t, there's a train at eight !
2. The mouse was delighted and excited.
3. It started to rain.
4. We have three lights in this room.



Look and identify. انظر وتعرف.



Two fourths of the biscuit has jam.

A fraction can name more than 1 equal part of a whole.

$\frac{1}{2}$ one half

$\frac{2}{2} = 1$ two halves = [one whole]

$\frac{1}{3}$ one third

$\frac{2}{3}$ two thirds

$\frac{3}{3}$ three thirds = [one whole]

$\frac{1}{4}$ one fourth

$\frac{2}{4}$ two fourths

$\frac{3}{4}$ three fourths

$\frac{4}{4} = 1$ four fourths = [one whole]

• Help your child to look and identify the names of fractions.

- ساعد طفلك أن ينظر و يتعرف على أسماء الكسور.

Remember :



The signs
العلامات

>	bigger than	أكبر من
<	smaller than	أصغر من
=	the same as	يساوى

 **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

How we can make a fraction simpler. كيف يمكننا تبسيط الكسر.

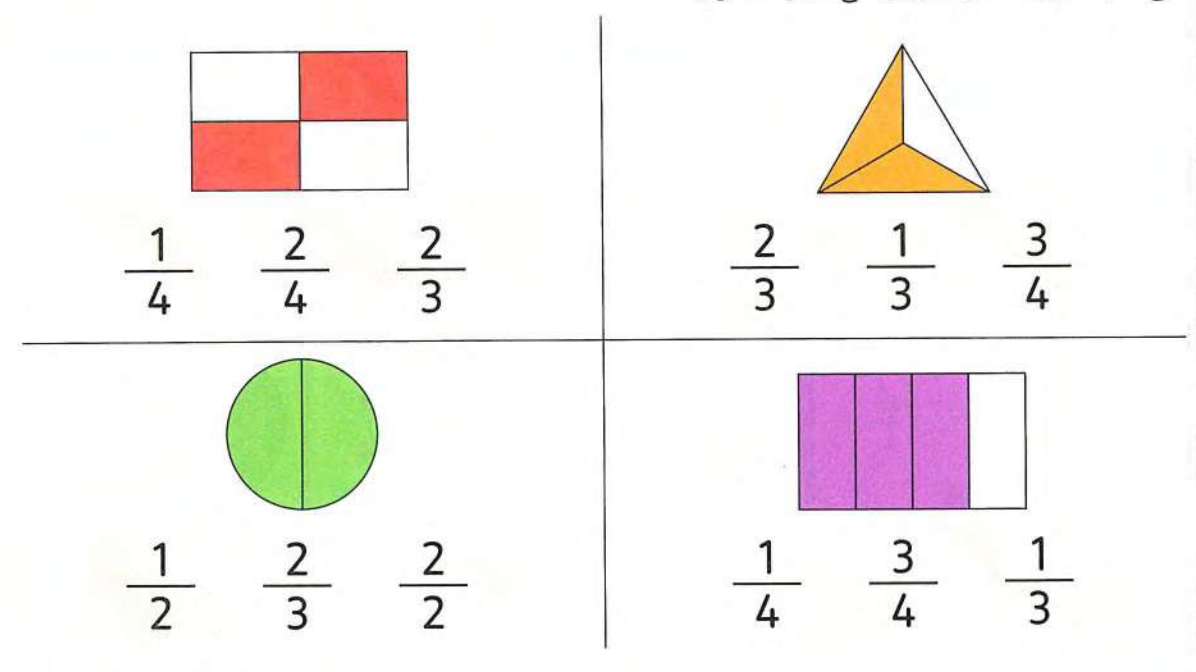
We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.
يمكننا تبسيط الكسر بقسمة البسط والمقام على نفس العدد.

$$\frac{30}{60} \xrightarrow[\div 30]{\div 30} \frac{1}{2} \overset{\text{so}}{\Rightarrow} \frac{30}{60} = \frac{1}{2}$$



Pop Quiz on Math

Circle the fraction which shows the colored part.
ضع دائرة حول الكسر الذى يوضح الجزء الملون.



$\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{2}{4}$ $\frac{2}{3}$

$\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{1}{3}$ $\frac{3}{4}$

$\frac{1}{2}$ $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{2}{2}$

$\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{3}{4}$ $\frac{1}{3}$

Notes for parents

- Help your child to read and learn how we can make a fraction simpler.
- Ask your child to circle the fraction which shows the colored part.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعلم كيف يمكننا تبسيط الكسر.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يضع دائرة حول الكسر الذى يوضح الجزء الملون.



General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The city mouse visited the country mouse in his ....
   a. balcony   b. mountain   c. hill   d. hole
2. The country mouse's hole is in the ....
   a. ground   b. wall   c. roof   d. street
3. The country mouse was .... and excited.
   a. angry   b. pleased   c. sad   d. hungry
4. The country mouse gave his friend .... and seeds.
   a. bananas   b. grass   c. flowers   d. trees

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My mom cooked delicious food. There were lovely .... from our kitchen.
   a. lights   b. smells   c. candles   d. sounds
2. My little sister was .... when she saw the snake.
   a. scared   b. happy   c. delighted   d. pleased
3. I was late, so I couldn't .... the train.
   a. touch   b. catch   c. write   d. walk
4. I won a prize. I'm very ....
   a. noisy   b. worried   c. nervous   d. pleased

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

exciting - covers - noise - country - mouse

Life in the city is different from life in the country. In the city, the smoke from the cars (1) .... the stars. The (2) .... is incredibly loud. The city is (3) ...., but it's too scary. The (4) .... life is quieter and cleaner than the city.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was **pleased**. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The two friends ran to the train to go to the city. In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared. He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.

The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "........................".
   a. Life in the city and in the country   b. Farming in Egypt
   c. A visit to the sea   d. A sport you like most

2. The underlined word "**pleased**" means very........................
   a. worried   b. sad   c. busy   d. happy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Do you think the country mouse loved the city or the country more?

....

4. How was the life in the city?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. There are three .... (mouse) in the hole.
2. The .... (child) are playing in the garden.
3. The lion's .... (tooth) are sharp, so he can eat meat easily.
4. The monkey has two .... (foot).

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

different people like different things

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (١٨) ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

City life

Guiding elements : • pretty • smoke

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 4 & 5

- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

gate	بوابة	electricity	كهرباء
backpack	حقيبة ظهر	pants	بنطلون
modern	حديث	neighbor	جار
shopping mall	مركز تسوق	nervous	عصبى / متوتر

Extra vocabulary

blue	لون أزرق	gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالوقود (الغاز)
kind	طيب / عطوف	possible	ممكن
shopping area	منطقة تسوق	history project	مشروع مادة التاريخ
shoe store	متجر أحذية	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
math	مادة الرياضيات	neighborhood	حى
quieter	أكثر هدوءًا	gray	لون رمادى
classroom	فصل دراسـى	T-shirt	تى شيرت
teacher	مُعلم / مُعلمة	games	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered
cry	يبكى	cried
study	يذاكر / يدرس	studied
carry	يحمل	carried

Irregular

Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke
say	يقول	said
drive	يقود	drove

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• My first day of	يومى الأول فى	• It was fun !	لقد كان ممتعًا !
• at the school gate	عند بوابة المدرسة	• then and now	ما بين الماضى والحاضر
• stay at	يمكث فى	• find out	يكتشف
• as much as possible	أكبر قدر ممكن	• much cleaner	أكثر نظافة
• put on = wear	يرتدى	• [be] called	يسمى
• like this	مثل ذلك		

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
My first day of school	nervous	I was very nervous at my first day of school.
	put on - pants	I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants.
	gate - cry	At the school gate, I wanted to cry.
	excited - friends	The next day, I was excited and had new friends.
My town then and now	cars - past	All the cars were gas cars in the past.
	electricity - cleaner	Now, some cars use electricity which is cleaner and quieter.
	town - shopping	Our town in the past had an old shopping area.
	now - modern	Now, we have a big modern shopping mall.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I carry my .... and go to school.
   a. backpack b. game c. gate d. class
2. When I go to school, I meet my .... and friends.
   a. toys b. teachers c. clothes d. family
3. They opened the house .... when the cars arrived.
   a. gate b. TV c. toy d. book

II Listening and Reading





My first day of school

I remember my first day of school.
I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan.

I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family.
I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes.
I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

At the school gate, I wanted to cry.
I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom.
The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan.
The teacher was very kind. We studied math
and played games; it was fun!

The next day, I wasn't nervous.
I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan.
I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.



by Younis

Summarize the key ideas.
لخص الأفكار الرئيسية.

Learn 1. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
- I wasn't happy on my first day of school.

Practice 2. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.
....



III Writing skill

How to plan your writing كيف تخطط لكتابتك



* We use key words when we write notes. We don't write sentences.
نستخدم كلمات دالة أساسية عند كتابة الملاحظات. لا نكتب جمل كاملة.

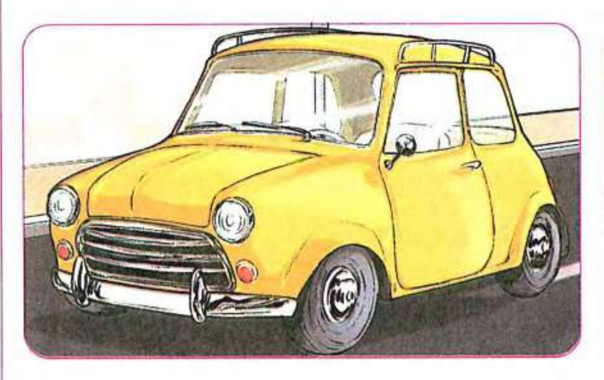
Notes : first day of school - six years old - Aswan - nervous - stay at home - play - school gate - classroom

أتذكر يومى الأول فى المدرسة. كنت فى السادسة من عمرى، وكنت أعيش فى أسوان. كنت متوتر جدًا. أحببت البقاء فى المنزل مع عائلتى. أردت أن ألعب بألعابى ولم أرغب فى الذهاب إلى المدرسة. ارتديت قميصًا أزرق، وبنطلونًا رماديًا، وحذاءًا أسود. حملت حقيبة الظهر الخاصة بى. وسرنا أنا وأمى إلى المدرسة. عند بوابة المدرسة، أردت البكاء. قلت وداعًا وسرت إلى الفصل. طلبت منى المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب صبى يُدعى مروان. كانت المعلمة لطيفة جدًا. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب؛ لقد كان ممتعًا ! فى اليوم التالى، لم أكن متوترًا. كنت متحمسًا. أردت رؤية صديقى الجديد، مروان. أردت أن أتعلم الرياضيات وأردت الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

☆ Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

My town then and now

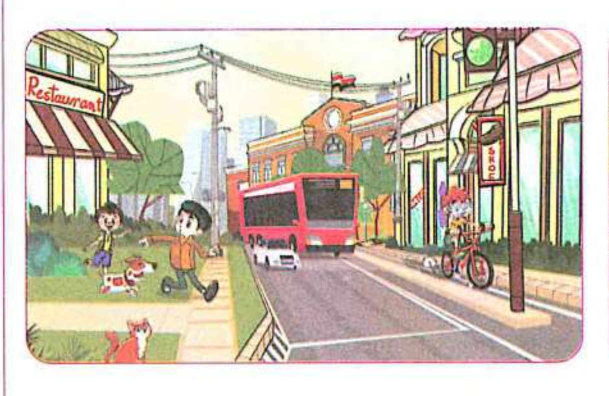
We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible.



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.



Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

نحن نقوم بمشروع لمادة التاريخ فى المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى صور قديمة. تحدثنا إلى جيراننا الأكبر سنًا لمعرفة أكبر قدر ممكن من المعلومات.
- تقول الجدة إن والدتها وأبيها كانوا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تعمل بالوقود. كانت صاخبة جدًا.
- الآن لدينا سيارة تعمل بالكهرباء والغاز؛ إنها أنظف وأكثر هدوءًا.
- كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوق، ولكنها كانت قديمة جدًا. كان أبى يعمل فى متجر أحذية أيام السبت.
- اليوم لدينا مركز تجارى كبير وحديث، لكننى لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

General Exercises on Lessons 4& 5



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Omar's .... had a shopping area in the past.
   a. village   b. town   c. city   d. country
2. Omar's dad worked in a .... store.
   a. shoe   b. butcher   c. book   d. flower
3. Omar doesn't like ....
   a. jumping   b. running   c. swimming   d. shopping
4. Omar wants to play ....
   a. tennis   b. handball   c. football   d. volleyball

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. My father was .... because he lost his keys.
   a. kind   b. delighted   c. quiet   d. nervous
2. My mother bought me a new .... I can put my school books in it.
   a. bottle   b. backpack   c. tie   d. sweater
3. They close the school .... at 8:00 and open it at 2:00.
   a. roof   b. floor   c. wall   d. gate
4. .... is my favorite subject.
   a. Tennis   b. Math   c. Football   d. Running

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

shoe - kind - noisy - electricity - shopping

Grandpa says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. These cars were very (1)...................... . Our town had a (2)...................... area, but it was very old. My dad worked in a (3)...................... store on Saturdays. Our town is different now. We have a car that uses (4)...................... and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

I'm Nader. I'm nine years old. At my first day of school, I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

I **put on** a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said

goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan. The teacher was very kind and helpful. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined phrase "**put on**" means to ....
   a. cut b. study c. leave d. wear
2. Nader went to school with his ....
   a. dad b. mom c. sister d. brother

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was Nader's uniform ?

....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

we are doing a history project at school

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية مكونة من (١٨) ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

"Your first day of school"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- What did you put on ?
- How did you feel at school ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Make logical inferences from the text

? تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى إتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

 التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استنتاج بعض المعلومات التى تكون موجودة بشكل غير مباشر فى النص.

 مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص جيدًا تستطيع من خلال الأحداث القيام باستنتاج هذه المعلومات.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

The Nile is the longest river in the world .We can get water from it to drink. It helps the farmers grow their crops. The Nile has two branches. There are many animals, birds and reptiles living there. One of the planet's largest reptile, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

شرح الحل اقـرأ المعلومـات الـواردة جيـدًا لـكى تتمكـن مـن اسـتنتاج معلومـات أخـرى مثـلًا :

* يستخدم النيل للشرب والزراعة ويعيش به الكثير من الكائنات الحية، فنستنتج أهمية نهر النيل للحياة.

- Do you think the Nile is important for Egypt ? Why ?

- Yes, because we can get water from it to drink and it helps the farmers grow their crops.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I liked staying home with my family. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants. Mom and I walked to school. The teacher was kind and I had a new friend. I studied math and played games with my friends at the next day of school.

1. Did the writer take the bus to school ?

....

2. How do the writer feel at the next day of school?

....



2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [نهر النيل] و [الحياة فى المدينة والريف] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1
Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

The Nile	الأطول	....
	فروع	....
	زواحف	....
	تمساح النيل	....
	حياة	....
	مركز الأرض	....
Life in the city and in the country	رائع	....
	دخان	....
	صاخب	....
	الريف	....
	هادئ	....
	عالٍ	....

Step 2
Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
2. The Nile has two .... in Egypt.
3. The Nile brings .... to the whole of Egypt.
4. The Nile crocodile is a ....
5. The .... lives in the Nile.

1. The city is ....
2. The .... from the cars covered the stars.
3. The noise was incredibly ....
4. Life in the country is very ....

Step 3
Topics

▶ Write paragraphs using the sentences :

The Nile

....
....
....
....
....

Life in the city and in the country

....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٢ جملة).

1 The Nile

The Nile is very important for Egypt[1]. We can get water from it to drink[2]. The Nile helps the farmers grow their crops[3]. The Nile has two branches[4]. There're many animals, birds and reptiles living there[5]. One of the planet's largest reptile, the Nile crocodile, lives in it [6].

2 My town in the past and present

The town where I grew up was very clean[7]. It was very quiet when I lived here[8]. Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world[9]. There were no cars[10]. There was only grass and a big tree[11]. There were not many houses[12].

3 My first day of school

I remember my first day of school[13]. I was six years old[14]. I was very nervous[15]. I wanted to stay home[16]. Mom and I walked to school[17]. The teacher was kind and I had a new friend[18].

4 The city life

The city is pretty[19]. It full of bright lights[20]. The noise was incredibly loud[21]. The smoke from the cars covered the stars[22].



TEST YOUR SKILLS



This is where I live



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى فى الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

drink – crops – branches – crocodiles

Nadia : Hi, Lamiaa. Do you know how many branches the Nile has?

Lamiaa : I think it has two (1) ....

Nadia : That's right. Why is the Nile important?

Lamiaa : To (2) .... and grow crops.

Nadia : What animals live in it?

Lamiaa : I think turtles and (3) ....

My Language

2 Read and circle the correct word.

There (was / were) no cars in the past. We (played / play) in the street. There (is / was) a big tree in the past. We (plant / planted) a lot of flowers in our street when we were younger.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Amany .... (works) very hard yesterday.
2. My uncle .... (visits) us last week.
3. He .... (is) hungry because he didn't have his breakfast.

My Writing

4 Write notes about (18-24) words about your first day of school.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

My Project

5 Make a poster about your town in the past and now.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 7

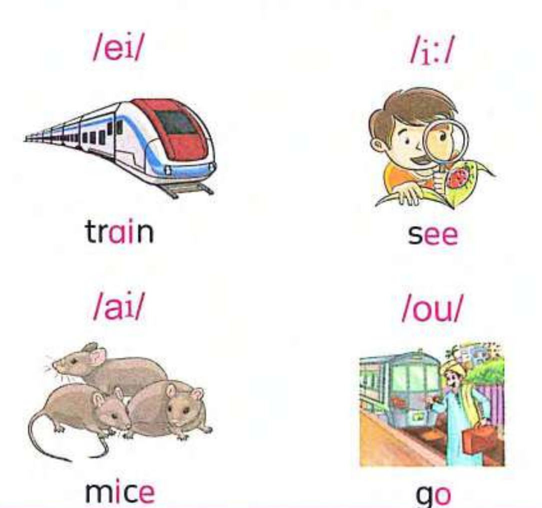
مراجعة عامة على الوحدة السابعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

city	مدينة كبيرة
building	مبنى
village	قرية
gate	بوابة
desert	صحراء
excited	متحمس
river	نهر
mountain	جبل
curious	فضولى
memory	ذاكرة
situation	موقف

Phonics

Long vowels



Language

The Past Simple Tense

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل + تكملة الجملة.

She listened to music. → التصريف الثانى للفعل (المنتظم)

He built our city. → التصريف الثانى للفعل (غير المنتظم)

Subject الفاعل + did not = (didn't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex. - She didn't listen to music. (listen → inf.) - He didn't build our city. (build → inf.)

I / He / She / It —اسم مفرد→ was / wasn't + باقى الجملة.

We / They / You —اسم جمع→ were / weren't + باقى الجملة.

Test 1 on Unit 7

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... is very important for our lives.
   a. sea b. lake c. Nile d. ocean
2. It helps us to drink and .... food.
   a. grow b. sell c. buy d. visit
3. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and ....
   a. turtles b. lions c. parrots d. elephants
4. One of the planet's largest .... is the Nile crocodile.
   a. mammals b. fish c. birds d. reptiles

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The city is very busy and ....
   a. quiet b. calm c. noisy d. free
2. Grandpa .... his metal box in the ground.
   a. read b. fed c. sold d. buried
3. Ali is ...., he asked his neighbors to give him more information about gas cars.
   a. lazy b. boring c. curious d. sad
4. Farmers started .... the ground to put the seed.
   a. visiting b. building c. digging d. crossing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

kind - bus - wake - friends - ask

I go to school every day. I [1]...................... up early. I go by [2]...................... . I meet my [3]................ and we play and study. Our teachers are [4]...................... . They teach us math and English.

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

Last summer, I visited my grandparents who lived in a small village. It was a very **quiet** place. The air wasn't polluted. There were a lot of plants and green areas. Unlike my city, the life is busy in it. In my city, the smoke covers the sky. There are a lot of cars and trucks. They're very noisy. I loved the country more. The life is good for me in the country.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**quiet**" means ....

a. not noisy b. cold c. not clean d. busy

2. The .... covers the sky in the city.

a. stars b. smoke c. air d. moon

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. What makes noise in the city ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. There .... [are] no cell phones in the past.
2. In the past, people .... [driving] gas cars.
3. What subjects .... [do] you study yesterday ?
4. Last month, I .... [give] my dad a nice present.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

how do you go to school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من [١٨] ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

Your town in the past and now

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• How was your town in the past ?	It was quiet and had many parks.
• How is your town now ?	There is too much traffic and noise.

....

....

....

....

....

Test 2 on Unit 7

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. I remember my first day of ....
   a. park b. school c. forest d. hospital
2. I wanted to .... at the school gate.
   a. run b. sleep c. cry d. laugh
3. I put on a green T-shirt, gray pants and black ....
   a. skirts b. shoes c. shirts d. socks
4. My dad .... me to school.
   a. visited b. walked c. rode d. drove

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Mice live in .... in the ground. [القاهرة - مصر الجديدة ٢٠٢٣]
   a. walls b. halls c. balls d. holes
2. In the city, the .... from cars causes breathing problems. [الشرقية - ههيا ٢٠٢٣]
   a. light b. sound c. smoke d. electricity
3. The gas cars were very .... [قنا - قنا ٢٠٢٣]
   a. calm b. quiet c. noisy d. clean
4. Siwa is an amazing .... in Egypt. [قنا - قفط ٢٠٢٣]
   a. lake b. river c. forest d. oasis

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

اقرأ واكمل النص بكلمات من المربع.

tall - cleaner - noisy - electricity - gas

We are doing a project at school about the history of cars. In the past, cars were (1) .... cars. They were very (2) .... Now, we have a car that uses (3) .... and gas. It's much (4) .... and quieter. [بني سويف - أهناسيا ٢٠٢٣]

4 Read the text and answer the questions. اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة.

My name is Mona. I am eleven years old. I live with my family in a big city in Egypt. The city is very noisy and crowded. Smoke and noise are everywhere, but there are lots of pretty lights. I visited my grandma last weekend. She lives in a small village. It's very quiet and clean in the village and there are lots of trees and grass. I think the village is a place where life is good for me.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is "......................" .

a. The village is much quieter than the city　　b. The smoke

c. A big village　　d. Mona's day

2. Mona lives with her ....

a. family　　b. grandma　　c. friends　　d. cousins

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. Do you think Mona loves the village more or the city ? Why ?

....

[المنوفية - شبين الكوم ٢٠٢٣]

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس.

1. Sara .... [does] research about animals last week.
2. In the past, our town .... [has] a nice park.
3. Many years ago, the buildings .... [are] different.
4. Yesterday, my grandpa didn't .... [found] his box of memories.

6 Punctuate the following.

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى.

where is grandpa's village

[الغربية - غرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من [١٨] ثمانية عشر كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الإرشادية التالية.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

The Nile

Guiding elements : • longest river　　• branches

[القاهرة - القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣]

....

....

....

....

....

....



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

▶ **Listen and choose the correct answer.** استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. The .... is home for different kinds of fish and turtles. [wind - Nile - cloud]
2. One of the planet's .... reptiles is the Nile crocodile. [shortest - smallest - largest]
3. People need the Nile for .... [playing - running - drinking]

▶ **Read and complete the dialogue.** اقرأ واكمل المحادثة.

When – go – car – got

Hala : Hi, Rania. (1) .... did you get up today ?
Rania : I (2) .... up at 6 : 00 am.
Hala : How did you (3) .... to school ?
Rania : I went to school by (4) ....

▶ **Choose the correct answer.** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة.

1. Our town had a shopping ....
   a. bag   b. area   c. road   d. bottle
2. My grandpa remembered his village where he .... up.
   a. grew   b. planted   c. visited   d. planted
3. It's incredibly .... in the city. It's very noisy.
   a. quiet   b. loud   c. calm   d. empty
4. There .... cars in the past.
   a. isn't   b. aren't   c. weren't   d. wasn't
5. Sara puts .... her school uniform every day.
   a. out   b. on   c. by   d. down

▶ **Reorder.** رتب.

1. Grandpa - the box - Where - bury - did ?

....

2. had - of - The road - lots - trucks.

....

3. the - mouse - city - The country - visited.

....

4. carried - I - my -yesterday - backpack.

....

5. very - was - teacher - kind - The.

....



Unit 8 We had fun

لقد استمتعنا

Aims of Unit eight : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الثامنة :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- find out how to use quantifiers.
  - أتعرف على كيفية استخدام محددات الكمية.
- practice using past simple irregular verbs.
  - أتدرب على استخدام الأفعال الغير منتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط.
- discuss and write about festivals.
  - أناقش وأكتب عن الاحتفالات.
- read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
  - اقرأ عن الأعياد والاحتفالات المصرية.
- talk about special family days.
  - أتحدث عن المناسبات العائلية الخاصة.
- write about a special day.
  - أكتب عن يوم مميز.

Lesson

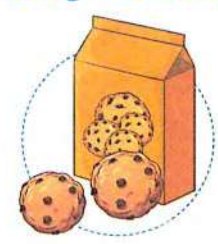
1 ▶ Food and drinks



I Vocabulary



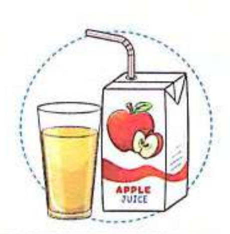
Key vocabulary



a packet of cookies
عبوة من الكعك المحلى



a bar of chocolate
قالب من الشيكولاتة



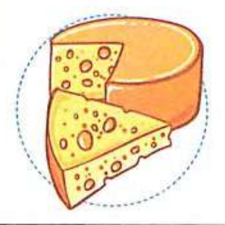
a carton of juice
علبة كرتون من العصير



a bottle of water
زجاجة من المياه



a slice of cake
شريحة من الكيك



a piece of cheese
قطعة من الجبن

Extra vocabulary

lemon	ليمون	cola	كولا (مياه غازية)	milk	حليب
thirsty	عطشان	carrot	جزرة	meat	لحم
soap	صابون	semolina	دقيق السميد	horrible	فظيع / مزعج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	drink	يشرب	drank
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought
			grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- You look a bit green. تبدو مريض.
- have fun يستمتع
- feel well يشعر أنه بحالة جيدة
- Is it all ? هل هذا كل شيء؟

Did you know ?

- In Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is semolina with meat and/or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a dessert.

يوجد في المغرب، الجزائر وتونس، طبق مشهور يسمى الكسكسي. إنه سميد باللحم و/ أو الخضار. يمكن أيضًا تناوله مع السكر أو كحلوى.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Did you have fun at the party, Reem ? هل استمتعتى بالحفلة يا ريم ؟

Yes, thank you. نعم، شكرًا لك.


What's the matter ? You look a bit green. ما الأمر ؟ تبدين مريضة.


Hmm, I don't feel well. همم، لا أشعر أنى بحالة جيدة.


Oh, dear. Did you eat too much ? أوه، عزيزتى. هل أكلتى كثيرًا ؟


I only had a slice of cake. تناولت فقط قطعة من الكيك.


Anything else ? هل من شئ آخر؟


No ... I drank some juice. لا ... شربت بعض العصير.


Some juice ? بعض العصير ؟


Well, a carton of juice. حسنًا، علبة من العصير.


Is that all ? هل هذا كل شئ ؟


Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one ... and a piece of cheese.
ربما قالب من الشيكولاته، فقط واحدة صغيرة ... وقطعة جبن.


Cheese and chocolate ? That's horrible ! جبن وشيكولاتة؟ هذا فظيع !


That's why I ate some cookies. لهذا السبب أكلت بعض الكعك المحلى.


How many cookies did you eat ? كم عدد الكعك المحلى التى قمتى بتناولها ؟


A ... packet ... of cookies. عبوة ... من الكعك المحلى.


Oh, no ! أوه، لا !


I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.
شعرت بالعطش بعد كل هذا الطعام، لذلك شربت زجاجة مياه.

III Language Focus

Uncountable nouns الأسماء غير المعدودة

- هى الأسماء التى لا تُعد وإذا أردنا أن نحدد كميتها فإننا نستخدم أدوات التجزئة :

quantifier أداة التجزئة		uncountable noun اسم لا يعد		countable noun اسم يعد
a bottle of	+	water	=	a bottle of water

Examples of quantifiers : أمثلة لمحددات الكمية :

a slice of شريحه من	a piece of قطعة من	a packet of عبوة من	a bar of قالب من	a carton of عبوة كرتون من
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
cake	cheese	cookies	chocolate	juice



Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. There is a .... [bottles] of water.
2. Can I have a slice .... [on] cake, please ?
3. We need four .... [packet] of milk.
4. I ate a .... [bottle] of pizza.
5. He bought a .... [carton] of chocolate.
6. Do you have a .... [bar] of water ?
7. She gave me a .... [bottle] of cookies.
8. Mom gives each one a .... [bar] of cake.
9. We will buy a carton .... [off] juice.
10. The mouse ate a .... [carton] of cheese.

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last week was my .... birthday.
   a. grandfather's b. grandmother's c. mother's d. father's
2. My mom made nice ....
   a. noodles b. cookies c. cakes d. fries
3. I drank three .... of juice.
   a. cartons b. slices c. pieces d. bars
4. My brother had a bottle of ....
   a. water b. juice c. milk d. tea

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I'm very .... I want to drink water.
   a. thirsty b. hungry c. angry d. nervous
2. "You look a bit green" means you are ....
   a. hungry b. happy c. sick d. sad
3. It's healthy to drink two bottles of .... every day.
   a. water b. tea c. cookies d. chocolate
4. We have .... in the party. We are happy.
   a. soap b. accident c. fun d. cartons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

packet - bar - milk - soap - carton

Yesterday was too hot. I drank two bottles of water and one (1) .... of juice. My sister ate a (2) .... of cookies and drank a cup of (3) .... I used a bar of (4) .... to wash my face and hands.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We had a great time yesterday. It was my friend's birthday. There was a lot of food. My friend Adel ate a bar of chocolate. It was **delicious**. I drank a carton of juice. My friend Sameh ate a packet of cookies. Omar had three slices of chocolate cake. So, he looked a bit green.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about " A .... party".

a. birthday　　b. school　　c. food　　d. wedding

2. The underlined word "delicious" means "........................ ".

a. busy　　b. tasty　　c. ugly　　d. hot

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. Why did Omar look a bit green ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I need a .... (piece) of juice.
2. She has a .... (packets) of cookies.
3. I forgot to bring a .... (carton) of water.
4. Do you want a slice .... (at) cake ?

6 Punctuate the following.

i want a bar of chocolate

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN(18) words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Food and drinks

Guiding elements :

- a bottle of
- cake

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

▸ A poem
▸ Language focus



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

trip	رحلة (قصيرة)	octopus	أخطبوط	song	أغنية
dessert	حلوى (تقدم بعد وجبة الطعام)	meal	وجبة	Damietta	محافظة دمياط
beach	شاطئ	lovely	محبوب / رائع	frozen yogurt	زبادى مثلج

Extra vocabulary

poem	قصيدة	movie	فيلم	candy	حلوى
dish	طبق / وجبة	ice-cream	آيس كريم	sick	مريض
deep	عميق	healthy	صحى	remember	يتذكر

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- taste horrible - مذاقه سيئ للغاية
- live by the sea - يعيش بجوار البحر
- go again soon - يذهب مرة أخرى قريبًا
- a day to remember - يوم للذكرى
- get wet - يبتل / يصبح رطبًا
- catch a fish - يصطاد سمكة

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
A trip to the sea	weekend	We went to the sea last weekend.
	nice time	We swam and had a nice time.
	fish - octopus	We saw fish and an octopus in water.
	deep - blue	The water in the sea was deep and blue.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My dad caught a fish and made a lovely ....!
   a. song b. dish c. summer d. month
2. They had ice-cream for ....
   a. homework b. desert c. soup d. dessert
3. It was a day to .... It was a wonderful day.
   a. remember b. sleep c. forget d. hit
4. Nour and Rokaya stayed in a hotel .... the sea.
   a. with b. by c. of d. in

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
• تدرب على ٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Our trip to the Sea

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see
Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.
We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.
We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!
Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made
into a lovely dish!
We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert,
Bananas, apples and frozen yogurt.
We saw some old photos and sang a song,
But time was short. The day wasn't long.
We felt happy. It was a day to remember.
We will go again soon, early September!



فى نهاية الأسبوع الماضى ذهبنا إلى دمياط لرؤية الجدة والجد، اللذان يعيشان بجانب البحر. سبحنا فى المياه التى كانت عميقة وزرقاء اللون. لقد رأينا الكثير من الأسماك وأخطبوط، أيضًا! اصطاد الجد سمكة، التى أعدتها الجدة فى طبق جميل! تناولنا الوجبة وتناولنا حلوى صحية؛ موز، تفاح وزبادى مثلج. رأينا بعض الصور القديمة وغنينا أغنية. لكن الوقت كان قصيرًا. لم يكن اليوم طويلًا. شعرنا بالسعادة. كان يوم للذكرى. سنذهب مرة أخرى قريبًا، فى أوائل سبتمبر!

Demonstrate understanding of specific details.
وضح فهمك للتفاصيل.

Learn 1. Where did they go?
- They went to Damietta.

Practice 2. What did they eat?
....



Past simple with irregular verbs الأفعال الغير منتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Remember :



Notice: Subj. الفاعل + التصرف الثانى للفعل + باقى الجملة ....

see → saw   go → went

Irregular verbs have no rule, we just have to learn these verbs and their past forms as they are.

لا توجد قاعدة توضح كيفية تحويل الأفعال الغير منتظمة للماضـى البسيط، علينا فقط أن نتعلم هذه الأفعال و صياغتها كما هى.

Verb	meaning	Past simple
wake	يستيقظ	woke
hear	يسمع	heard
[be]	يكون	was / were
leave	يترك	left
read	يقرأ	read
run	يجرى	ran
say	يقول	said
teach	يُعلم	taught
write	يكتب	wrote
make	يصنع	made
win	يفوز	won
throw	يلقى	threw
fly	يطير	flew
give	يعطى	gave
take	يأخذ	took
get	يحصل على	got
catch	يصطاد	caught

Verb	meaning	Past simple
cut	يقطع	cut
come	يأتى	came
break	يكسر	broke
bring	يحضر	brought
buy	يشترى	bought
do	يفعل	did
draw	يرسم	drew
drink	يشرب	drank
eat	يأكل	ate
feel	يشعر	felt
find	يجد	found
have	يمتلك/ يتناول	had
keep	يحافظ	kept
forget	ينسى	forgot
know	يعرف	knew
sing	يغني	sang
swim	يسبح	swam

• Help your child learn about irregular verbs in the past simple tense.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن الأفعال الغير منتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. The cat .... [catch] a mouse yesterday.
2. My mom .... [buy] some food last weekend.
3. He .... [draw] a beautiful tree last night.
4. We .... [make] a healthy salad for lunch yesterday.
5. They .... [leave] their house and traveled to Egypt.
6. I .... [eat] too much candy. I felt sick.
7. We all .... [sing] a song in the class yesterday.
8. I .... [be] very tired last night. I went to bed at 8 o'clock.

تدريب تلقائي
يهدف لإتقان القواعد اللغوية

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... a delicious cake yesterday.
   a. make b. made c. making d. makes
2. The neighbors .... noise last night.
   a. hear b. hears c. heard d. hearing
3. Sally .... her lunch box last week.
   a. forgot b. forget c. forgets d. to forget
4. I .... a great movie last night.
   a. see b. saw c. seeing d. sees
5. I had my swimming test yesterday, I .... 50 meters.
   a. swam b. swimming c. swim d. swims
6. I .... wet yesterday because it was raining.
   a. get b. got c. gets d. getting

3 Read and write the verbs in the past simple tense.

1. see .... 2. eat .... 3. swim ....
4. feel .... 5. wake .... 6. go ....
7. buy .... 8. give .... 9. fly ....
10. throw .... 11. draw .... 12. write ....

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last ...., I visited my grandma.
   a. month   b. year   c. day   d. week
2. My grandma lived by the ....
   a. sea   b. lake   c. village   d. town
3. We sang ....
   a. films   b. videos   c. songs   d. photos
4. We will go again soon, early ....
   a. July   b. September   c. October   d. November

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. Fishermen .... thousands of fish every day.
   a. ask   b. read   c. walk   d. catch
2. It's healthy to have frozen .... instead of candies for dessert.
   a. yogurt   b. cola   c. sweet   d. fish
3. The .... lives in the sea.
   a. giraffe   b. octopus   c. chameleon   d. fox
4. It's not safe for children to swim here. It is very ....
   a. deep   b. warm   c. good   d. nice

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

caught – remember – went – songs - water

Last week, I went to the beach with my family. We swam in the (1) ...., which was deep and blue. We sang (2) .... We (3) .... lots of fish. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to (4) .... We will go again soon.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of

fish and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a **healthy** dessert; bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This text is about "A......................." .
   a. nice trip b. school trip c. sports day d. visit to the zoo
2. The underlined word **"healthy"** is the opposite of ....
   a. useful b. unhealthy c. good d. nice

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did they go last weekend ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Mom .... [make] a delicious cake yesterday.
2. He .... [is] tired last week.
3. I .... [buy] a present for my friend yesterday.
4. My team .... [win] the match last Friday.

6 Punctuate the following.

do you like going to the beach

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

The beach

Guiding elements :

- When did you go to the beach ?
- What did you do there ?

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

▶ CLIL : Social Studies



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	fast	صيام - يصوم	Muslim festival	احتفال إسلامى
kahk	كحك	celebration	احتفال	Shawwal	شهر شوال [شهر هجرى]
Ramadan	شهر رمضان [شهر هجرى]	mosque	مسجد		

Extra vocabulary

Sham El-Nessim	شم النسيم	lettuce	خس	picnic	نزهة خلوية
park	حديقة [عامة]	green onions	بصل أخضر	bakery	مخبز
nuts	مكسرات	dried fish	سمك مجفف	people	ناس
moon	قمر	Islamic month	شهر إسلامى / هجرى	beans	حبوب
sunset	غروب الشمس	Coptic Easter	عيد القيامة [القبطى]		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened
add	يضيف	added
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

Irregular

Present		Past
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant
wear	يرتدى	wore
spend	ينفق / يقضى	spent

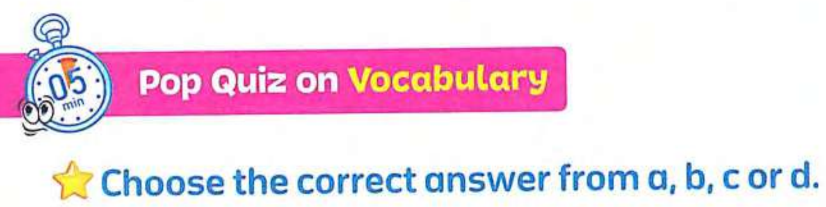
Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- during the day - أثناء النهار
- in the month of - فى شهر
- It's a time to + inf. - أنه وقت ...
- In the first day of .... - فى اليوم الأول من ....
- until sunset - حتى غروب الشمس
- do well - يؤدى بشكل جيد

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Festivals	Ramadan - Eid	Ramadan is the month before Eid.
	Muslims - during	Many Muslims fast during the day in Ramadan.
	happens - Shawwal	Eid Al-Fitr happens in the first day of Shawwal.
	kahk - celebrate	People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
	celebration - happy	Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr comes after ....

a. Shawwal   b. Ramadan   c. Sham El-Nessim   d. winter

2. We .... Sham El-Nessim in spring.

a. eat   b. move   c. read   d. celebrate

3. We go to the .... and see a lot of beautiful flowers and trees.

a. libraries   b. cinemas   c. parks   d. museums

4. We color boiled .... in Sham El-Nessim.

a. apples   b. oranges   c. fish   d. eggs

5. To .... is not to eat or drink.

a. celebrate   b. fast   c. buy   d. sleep

6. We went to the .... to buy some bread.

a. school   b. park   c. bakery   d. bank

7. Ramadan and .... are Islamic months.

a. May   b. Shawwal   c. March   d. April

II Listening and Reading

⭐ **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.
The month before Eid is called Ramadan.
In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

عيد الفطر فى مصر

عيد الفطر هو احتفال إسلامى. الشهر الذى يسبق العيد يسمى رمضان. يصوم الكثير من المسلمين نهارًا فى رمضان. هذا يعنى أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى غروب الشمس. فى شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس فى العام الماضى. ويفكرون فى الأشياء التى فعلوها بشكل جيد والأشياء التى يريدون القيام بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

When is Eid Al-Fitr ?

That's a very good question ! It's different every year.
Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal.
The month starts when people see the new moon.

متى عيد الفطر؟

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا ! موعد عيد الفطر مختلف كل عام. يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجرى العاشر، الذى يسمى شوال. يبدأ الشهر عندما يرى الناس الهلال الجديد.

Lots of Kahk !

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكثير من الكحك !

الكحك هو كعك محلى لذيذ. الناس يأكلون الكحك للاحتفال. الكحك به مكسرات، سكر وعسل بداخله. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكحك ولكن يمكنك شرائه من المخبز أيضًا.

'Eid Mubarak'

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends.

People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate !



'عيد مبارك'

العيد هو وقت للاحتفال وأن تكون سعيد. يقول الناس «عيد مبارك» لأصدقائهم. يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون !

 **Look, read and identify.** انظر، اقرأ وتعرف.

Sham El-Nessim

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. All Egyptians celebrate Sham El-Nessim. During Sham El-Nessim people eat fesikh [dried fish], lettuce, green onions, termes [beans] and boiled eggs, have picnics and spend time outside.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال في مصر. يأتي في اليوم التالي لعيد القيامة. يحتفل جميع المصريين بيوم شم النسيم. يأكل الناس في شم النسيم الفسيخ [السمك المجفف]، الخس، البصل الأخضر، والترمس [حبوب] والبيض المسلوق ويتنزهون ويقضون وقتًا في الخارج.





We play in the park.
نلعب في الحديقة.





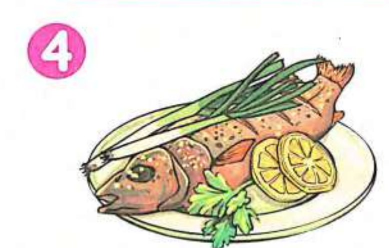
We color boiled eggs.
نلون البيض المسلوق.





We have picnics in the park.
نقوم بنزهة خلوية في الحديقة.

4



We eat dried fish and green onions.
نأكل سمك مجفف وبصل أخضر.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The month starts when people see the new ....
   a. sky b. sun c. star d. moon
2. Kahk are delicious ....
   a. burger b. pizza c. cookies d. cake
3. Kahk have nuts, sugar, and .... in them.
   a. honey b. fries c. ful d. falafel
4. We can buy kahk from a ....
   a. bank b. bakery c. school d. hotel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sham El-Nessim comes the day after ....
   a. Shawwal b. Ramadan c. Eid Al-Fitr d. Coptic Easter
2. All Muslims like going to .... to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
   a. banks b. mosques c. schools d. hospitals
3. We .... during the day in Ramadan.
   a. eat b. drink c. ask d. fast
4. We go to parks at Sham El-Nessim to have ....
   a. music b. lessons c. medicine d. picnics

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

winter - spring - dried fish - families - celebrated

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is (1) .... by Egyptians. It's a festival that celebrates the start of (2) .... We eat (3) .... and green onions during Sham El-Nessim. We go to the parks with our (4) .... to have picnics.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ramadan is a very important month for Muslims. In Ramadan, many Muslims **fast** during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about what they did well and the things they want to do better. It's also a time to help other people. Eid Al-Fitr is in the first day of 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined word "**fast**" means ....

   a. not to eat or drink until the sunrise
   b. to eat and drink until the sunset
   c. not to eat or drink until the sunset
   d. to eat in the sunrise

2. During Ramadan, people want to do ....

   a. better
   b. easier
   c. taller
   d. worse

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What month comes after Ramadan ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

when does the festival start

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding elements :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• When is Eid Al-Fitr ?	It happens in the first day of Shawwal.
• How do we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr ?	We eat kahk.

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons **4 & 5**

▸ Writing
▸ Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

great-grandma	الجدة الكبرى [والدة الجدة]	colored balls	كرات ملونة
cousin	ابن العم/الخال	special	مميز/خاص
Christmas tree	شجرة عيد الميلاد(الكريسماس)	picnic	نزهة

Extra vocabulary

come together	يجتمع / يلتقي	stars	نجوم	had fun	استمتع
aunt	عمة/خالة	Christmas	عيد الميلاد	games	ألعاب
whole	كل	lights	أضواء	country	دولة
birthday	عيد ميلاد	garden	حديقة [خاصة]	huge	ضخم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
decorate	يزين	decorated	throw	يرمي/يلقي	threw
represent	يمثل	represented			



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

☆ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My grandma's mother is my ....
   a. mom b. great-grandma c. grandparents d. aunt
2. The pyramids are ....
   a. little b. tiny c. huge d. small
3. We decorate the room with colored balls and ....
   a. lights b. bananas c. stones d. rocks
4. Christmas trees .... new life.
   a. decorate b. represent c. throw d. add

II Listening and Reading

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر ، استمع واقرأ.

Great-grandma's birthday

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came.

We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

قبل عامين، كان لدينا حفل خاص للغاية. بلغت جدتى الكبرى ٩٠ عامًا! اجتمع كل أفراد عائلتى للاحتفال. جاء جميع أبناء عماتى وخالاتى وأعمامى. قمنا بنزهة ضخمة فى حديقة عمتى. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: سلطة، لحم، سمك، خبز، كعك، بسكويت محلى، وفواكه. تناولت شريحة كبيرة من كيكة الشوكولاته وشـربت زجاجة من عصير البرتقال. كما أكلت بعض من السـلطة والفواكه. لقد لعبت بعض الألعاب مع أبناء عمومتى طوال فترة الظهيرة. ركضنا. ألقينا كرة . غنينا (عيد ميلاد سعيد) لوالدة جدتنا (جدتنا الكبرى). لقد كان يومًا مميزًا جدًا لأن جدتنا الكبرى كانت سعيدة جدًا. أحبت جدتى رؤية جميع أفراد الأسرة. لقد استمتعنا جميعًا.

 **Look and read.** انظر واقرأ.



In many countries,people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored balls, and stars.

فى العديد من البلدان، يزين الناس أشجار الكريسماس فى عيد الميلاد. هذه الأشجار دائمًا خضراء اللون. تمثل الأشجار حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الشجرة بالأضواء والكرات الملونة والنجوم.

General Exercises on Lessons 4& 5



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People .... Christmas trees in many countries.
   a. throw   b. represent   c. decorate   d. remember
2. Christmas .... represent new life.
   a. flowers   b. trees   c. plants   d. rooms
3. People decorate the tree with .... and colored balls.
   a. stones   b. rocks   c. games   d. lights
4. People in different countries like celebrating different ....
   a. festivals   b. birthdays   c. games   d. gardens

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mom .... the birthday cake herself.
   a. hid   b. threw   c. decorated   d. built
2. Christmas trees have .... balls and lights.
   a. colored   b. tennis   c. bad   d. dark
3. On Fridays, all my family .... and visit my grandparents.
   a. run away   b. come together   c. fall off   d. pull out
4. The crocodile is scary and ....
   a. small   b. huge   c. nice   d. kind

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

games - picnic – celebrate – grandma – sleep

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great- (1) .... was 90 years old! All my family came together to (2) .... All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge (3) .... in my aunt's garden. I played (4) .... with my cousins all afternoon. We ran and threw a ball.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts and uncles came. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish,

bread, cakes, cookies and fruit. I played with my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We sang "Happy Birthday" to my mother. My brother and I gave her a present. It was a special day. We were very happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about " .... ".

a. A father's birthday   b. Our picnic

c. A mother's birthday   d. A wedding party

2. The writer drank a carton of .... juice.

a. apple   b. mango   c. banana   d. orange

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. What did the writer's family do for mom ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

i liked seeing my whole family

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The Christmas tree

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- new life
- decorate

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Identify the general idea of the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.


التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى النص.


مفتاح الحل عند قراءة النص تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو [الفكرة الرئيسية / العامة] للنص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer :

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too! Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish!

We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert; bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September!

شرح الحل بعد قراءة الجمل نلاحظ أن النص يدور حول [a trip to the sea]

1. The text is about ....
Or : The main / general idea of the text is about ....
Or : The text talks about ....
Or : What's the main idea of the text / What's the text about ?

a. A party b. A trip to the sea
c. A birthday d. A school subject

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.
• We had a nice trip to the sea.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read the text and answer the questions :

Ramadan is a very important month for Muslims. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until the sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about what they did well and the things they want to do better. It's also a time to help other people. Eid Al-Fitr is in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

1. This text is about "..............".

a. Sham El-Nessim b. Ramadan
c. Kahk d. Christmas

2. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [عيد الفطر] و [عيد ميلاد الجدة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1
Review your vocabulary

▶ Write the meaning :

Eid-Al Fitr

إسلامى ....
بداية ....
احتفال ....
لذيذ ....
قمر ....
مسجد ....

Grandma's birthday

مميز ....
نزهة ....
كعك محلى ....
طعام ....
ضخم ....
متعة ....

Step 2
Sentences

▶ Complete the sentences :

1. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th .... month.
2. Kahk are .... cookies.
3. Eid is a time of .... and for being happy.
4. People go to the .... and spend time with their families.

1. Last week, we had a very..................... party for my grandma's birthday.
2. We had a .... in my aunt's garden.
3. There was lots of..................... : salad, meat, fish and bread.
4. The party was amazing and we had ....

Step 3
Topics

▶ Write paragraphs using the sentences :

"Eid Al-Fitr"

....
....
....
....
....
....

"Grandma's birthday"

....
....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٨ جملة].

1 A trip to the sea

Last weekend, we went to Alexandria[1]. We swam in the sea which was blue[2]. We saw lots of fish and an octopus[3]. My dad caught a big fish[4]. My mom made the fish into a lovely meal[5]. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert[6].

2 Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival[7]. It happens in the first day of Shawwal[8]. People say Eid Mubarak to their friends[9]. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr[10]. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families[11]. They eat delicious food and have fun[12].

3 Christmas trees

People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas[13]. These trees are always green[14]. The tree represents new life[15]. People use lights, colored balls and stars to decorate the trees[16]. Many countries celebrate Christmas every year[17]. Christmas is a very special day[18].



TEST YOUR SKILLS



We had fun



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with words in the box.

kahk – decorate – first – delicious

Ramy : Hi, Ali. When is Eid Al-Fitr?

Ali : Hi, Ramy. It happens in the (1) .... day of Shawwal.

Ramy : What do people do to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?

Ali : They eat (2) ....

Ramy : What are kahk?

Ali : They're (3) .... cookies.

My Language

2 Read and circle the correct word.

1. She had a bar of (chocolate / ice cream).
2. They (catch / caught) fish yesterday.
3. I (swim / swam) in the sea last week.

3 Read and choose the correct answer.

1. She .... a bottle of water yesterday.
   a. drink b. drank c. drinking
2. We .... much chocolate last night.
   a. eat b. eating c. ate
3. They didn't .... football last week.
   a. played b. play c. playing

My writing

4 Write a paragraph of TWENTY FOUR (24) words about.

Your favorite festival

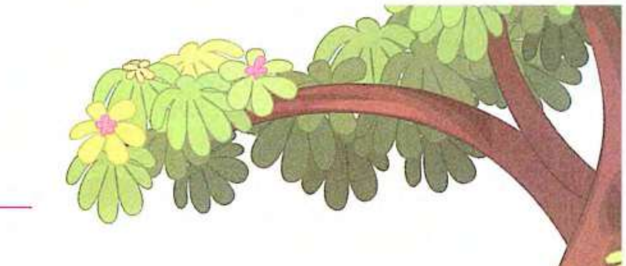
....
....
....
....
....
....

My project

5 Make a poster about a famous celebration in your country.

....
....
....
....
....

قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 8

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الثامنة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

chocolate	شيكولاتة	picnic	نزهة
water	مياه	fun	متعة
lemon	ليمون	dessert	حلوي
cake	كعكة	decorate	يزين
represent	يمثل / يقدم	trip	رحلة قصيرة
mosque	مسجد	fast	صيام / يصوم

Language

1 Past Simple Tense with Irregular verbs

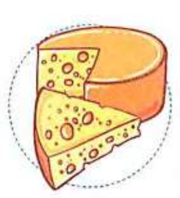
Subj. الفاعل + التصرف الثانى للفعل + باقي الجملة.........

Verb	meaning	Past simple	Verb	meaning	Past simple
wake	يستيقظ	woke	cut	يقطع	cut
hear	يسمع	heard	come	يأتى	came
(be)	يكون	was / were	break	يكسر	broke
leave	يغادر	left	bring	يحضر	brought
read	يقرأ	read	buy	يشترى	bought
run	يجرى	ran	do	يفعل	did
say	يقول	said	draw	يرسم	drew

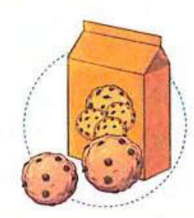
2 Quantifiers : محددات الكمية :



a slice of
شريحه من
↓
cake



a piece of
قطعة من
↓
cheese



a packet of
عبوة من
↓
cookies



a bar of
قالب من
↓
chocolate



a carton of
عبوة كرتون من
↓
juice

Test 3 on Unit 8

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Eid is a time of celebration and for being ....
   a. sad b. angry c. happy d. unhappy
2. People go to the .... and spend time with their families.
   a. hospital b. hotel c. school d. mosque
3. They eat delicious .... like kahk to celebrate.
   a. pizza b. cookies c. honey d. cake
4. Kahk have ...., sugar, and honey in them.
   a. fruits b. nuts c. dates d. chocolate

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. We had a huge .... in the park with our families.
   a. picnic b. work c. lesson d. job
2. My mother used milk and fruit to make frozen ....
   a. cakes b. cookies c. yogurt d. fish
3. We can buy cookies and cakes from the ....
   a. station b. hospital c. bakery d. library
4. We always have different .... after lunch, like fruit and juice.
   a. accidents b. subjects c. desserts d. lessons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

balls - represent - eggs - trees - decorate

Christmas is a special festival. In many countries, people (1) .... Christmas trees at Christmas. These (2) .... are always green. The trees (3) .... new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored (4) .... and stars.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, we went to Alexandria to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the sea, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a **lovely** dish ! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert: bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song, but time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September !

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Good friends b. Healthy food c. A trip to the sea d. Football match

2. The underlined word "**lovely**" means ....

a. delicious   b. big   c. bad   d. sad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did they have for the dessert ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He .... [catch] a big fish yesterday.
2. I have a .... [bottles] of water.
3. I .... [write] an email to Fady last week.
4. He will buy a .... [cartons] of juice.

6 Punctuate the following.

people eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The month of Ramadan"

Guiding elements :

- sunset
- fast

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 4 on Unit 8

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sally went to the .... yesterday.
   a. butcher b. bakery c. market d. school
2. Sally bought three cartons of ....
   a. milk b. juice c. water d. cake
3. Sally bought three bags of .... to bake a cake.
   a. bread b. flour c. wheat d. corn
4. Sally .... seventy pounds at the checkout.
   a. kept b. took c. played d. paid

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Muslims .... during the day of Ramadan.
   a. climb b. run c. fast d. feast (القليوبية - بنها ٢٠٢٣)
2. She looks a bit ...., she is tired.
   a. black b. gray c. green d. blue (القاهرة - إدارة الساحل ٢٠٢٣)
3. Breakfast is a very important ...., you should have it every morning.
   a. dessert b. juice c. meal d. snack (القاهرة - إدارة النزهة ٢٠٢٣)
4. We used colored balls to .... our house to celebrate the birthday party.
   a. paint b. decorate c. sell d. build (الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب ٢٠٢٣)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meal – swam – healthy – bad - octopus

Last weekend, we went to Alexandria. We (1) .... in the sea which was blue. We saw lots of fish and an (2) .... My dad caught a big fish. My mom made the fish into a lovely (3) .... We ate the meal and had a (4) .... dessert.

(الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٣)

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi! My name's Sama. I'm in grade four. Last Friday, it was my birthday. I became ten years old. All my family came to celebrate. My father gave me a

good present. It was a pet cat. I like cats very much. My cat is white. It has a long tail. It has blue eyes. It likes milk. It likes to run and jump. I love playing with my cat. It makes me happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d. [القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون ٢٠٢٣]

1. This text is about " .... ".
   a. Sama's school b. Sama's house c. Sama's birthday d. Sama's book
2. Sama's father gave her a ....
   a. dog b. cat c. horse d. parrot

B. Answer the following questions :

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. When was Sama's birthday ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I have a slice .... [on] cake.
2. She .... [come] to school early last Sunday.
3. Can I have a .... [bottle] of cheese ?
4. He .... [write] the paragraph yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following.

i want a bar of chocolate [القاهرة -المطرية ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt

Guiding elements :

- kahk
- Shawwal

[دمياط - دمياط الجديدة ٢٠٢٣]

....

....

....

....

....



تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

▶ Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim .... [meal – festival – birthday]
2. Muslims .... during the day in Ramadan. [fast – eat – sleep]
3. Fast means that people don't eat or drink until .... [sunrise – sunset – midnight]

▶ Read and complete the dialogue.

movie - cinema - do - watched

Aya : What did you (1) .... last night ?
Nour : I watched a great (2) ....
Aya : Did you watch it at the (3) .... ?
Nour : No, I (4) .... it at home.

▶ Choose the correct answer.

1. Eid is a time of .... and for being happy.
   a. invitation b. celebration c. transportation d. invention
2. I drank a .... of milk.
   a. slice b. bottle c. packet d. bar
3. My parents .... some old photos last night.
   a. saw b. sees c. see d. seeing
4. The boy .... the ball and broke the glass windows.
   a. felt b. threw c. kept d. opened
5. When people ...., they don't eat or drink until sunset.
   a. run b. fast c. celebrate d. decorate

▶ Reorder.

1. swam - in - We - the sea.

....

2. two - I - pizza - slices of - had.

....

3. a day - was - remember - It - to.

....

4. a bit - look - You - green.

....

5. do - celebrate - How - Eid Al-Fitr - people ?

....

February Test

اختبار شهر فبراير

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I was very .... at my first day of school.
   a. happy b. delighted c. nervous d. quiet
2. I lived in ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Giza d. Suez
3. I put on a .... T-shirt.
   a. yellow b. green c. blue d. black
4. Mom and I .... to school.
   a. ran b. walked c. jumped d. drove

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... during the day in Ramadan.
   a. play b. eat c. fast d. sleep
2. We color .... in Sham El-Nessim.
   a. bread b. eggs c. desert d. fish
3. In the city, there are many high ....
   a. lakes b. rivers c. buildings d. planets
4. We eat dried fish and green onions to celebrate ....
   a. Eid Al-Fitr b. Sham El-Nessim
   c. Ramadan d. Shawwal

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shopping – store - gas – photos – electricity

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old (1) .... We spoke to our older neighbors. All the cars were (2) .... cars. They were very noisy. Our town had a (3) .... area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe (4) .... on Fridays. Today, we have a big modern shopping mall and we use electric cars.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims **fast** during the day. This means they don't eat or drink

until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is " .... ".
   a. Eid Al-Fitr b. Christmas tree
   c. Sham El-Nessim d. Summer holiday
2. The underlined word " **fast**" means " not to .... ".
   a. sleep b. run c. eat d. study

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. When is Eid Al-Fitr ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He has a .... (packet) of pizza.
2. I .... (make) a sandcastle on the beach last summer.
3. They bought a .... (bar) of juice.
4. She .... (wake) up late yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following.

do you like going to the beach

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your first day of school

Guiding elements :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

- How did you feel ?
- What did you put on ?

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 9 What makes us special

ما الذى يجعلنا مميزين

Aims of Unit nine : الأهداف العامة للوحدة التاسعة :

In this unit I will ... فى هذه الوحدة سوف...

- read about party games. - أقرأ عن ألعاب الحفلات.
- listen about some unusual festivals around the world. - أستمع عن بعض الاحتفالات غير العادية حول العالم.
- practice more irregular past simple verb forms. - أتدرب أكثر على صيغ الفعل الغير منتظم فى زمن الماضى البسيط.
- explore how to present information. - أكتشف كيفية تقديم معلومات.
- write an invitation. - أكتب دعوة.
- work in groups to organize a class celebration. - أعمل فى مجموعات لتنظيم احتفال داخل الصف الدراسى.

Lesson 1

▶ Games around the world



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

games	ألعاب	winner	فائز	presents	هدايا
hide and seek	لعبة الاستغماية (الغميضة)	musical chairs	كراسى موسيقية	parcel	طرد / هدية
		player	لاعب	seeker	باحث

Extra vocabulary

traditional	تقليدى	rules	قواعد	popular	مشهور
person	شخص	team	فريق	place	مكان
children	أطفال	wide	واسع	without	بدون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
count	يعد	counted
respect	يحترم	respected
wrap	يغلف	wrapped
join	ينضم	joined
pass	يمرر	passed
unwrap	يزيل (غلاف)	unwrapped
cover	يغطى	covered

Irregular

Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat
hold	يمسك	held
hide	يختبئ	hid
become	يصبح	became
run	يجرى	ran
keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- get together with — يتقابل مع
- be ready to + inf. — كن مستعدًا لـ
- around the world — حول العالم
- take away — يزيل / يبعد
- the last one left — آخر من تبقى
- Here are some... — إليك بعض ...
- more fun — أكثر متعة
- take off — يزيل / ينزع
- put out — يضع
- play music — يشغل الموسيقى

Did you know ?

- Ful medames is a very old dish. Archaeologists found some ful medames in one of the Pyramids. It was thousands of years old!

الفول المدمس هو طبق قديم جدًا. وجد علماء الآثار بعض الفول المدمس فى واحد من الأهرامات. أى كان من آلاف السنين!

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Party games	parcel - presents	In pass the parcel game, we give presents.
	music - chairs	We need to play some music in the musical chairs game.
	hide - wide	In hide and seek game, we need a wide place to play it.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My dad gave me a .... on my birthday.
   a. planet b. present c. player d. winner
2. He won the game. He's the ....
   a. loser b. parcel c. winner d. circle
3. The students should .... the rules of their school.
   a. break b. respect c. hide d. cover



II Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Party Games

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

عندما نجتمع مع عائلتنا وأصدقائنا للاحتفال بشيء مثل عيد الميلاد أو حفل زفاف، غالبًا ما يلعب الأطفال الألعاب. إليك بعض الألعاب التقليدية التي يلعبها الناس حول العالم.

Pass the parcel

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents.

مرر الطرد : كلنا نحب أن نقدم الهدايا، بل فتح الهدايا أكثر متعة.

How to play: Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Play some music. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops,



• Ask your child to choose the correct answer.

- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.

the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who **unwraps** the present **keeps** it.

طريقة اللعب : لف هدية صغيرة وقم بتغطيتها بالكثير والكثير... والكثير من الورق. يجلس اللاعبون في دائرة. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يمنح اللاعبون الهدية للشخص التالي أثناء تشغيل الموسيقى. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يزيل اللاعب الذي يحمل الهدية ورقة واحدة. اللاعب الذي يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs



Run but be ready to sit! How to play: Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Play some music. Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without the chair is 'out'. Take away one chair and play again.

الكراسي الموسيقية : اجري لكن كن مستعدًا للجلوس! طريقة اللعب : ضع بعض الكراسي. إذا كان لديك ٦ لاعبين، فأنت تحتاج فقط إلى ٥ كراسي. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى. يقوم اللاعبون بالجري حول الكراسي. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يجلس الجميع. اللاعب الذي يكون بدون كرسي "يصبح خارج اللعبة". ابعد كرسي واحد والعب مرة أخرى.

Hide and seek



This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

How to play:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

لعبة الغُميضة / استغماية : هذه لعبة قديمة جدًا ومشهورة. يمكن للعديد من اللاعبين الانضمام في هذه اللعبة الممتعة. كل ما تحتاجه هو مكان واسع لكي تلعبها. طريقة اللعب : لاعب واحد يسمى (الباحث)، يغمض عينيه ويعد حتى عشرة. يختبئ اللاعبون الآخرون. يحاول الباحث العثور عليهم. يصبح اللاعب الأول الذي يجده الباحث هو الباحث التالي. اللاعب الأخير المتبقي هو الفائز.

Determine the meaning of words.

حدد معاني الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**unwrap**" means to ....

a. close b. lock c. open d. cover

Practice 2. The underlined word "**keep**" means to ....

a. throw b. give c. take d. jump

General Exercises on Lesson 1

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hide and seek is a very .... game.
   a. unknown b. tall c. old d. new
2. Many .... can join in this exciting game.
   a. players b. teachers c. farmers d. vets
3. You need a .... place to play hide and seek.
   a. tall b. long c. narrow d. wide
4. The seeker .... his or her eyes and counts to ten.
   a. opens b. closes c. sleeps d. plays

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. She .... the present in colorful paper and gives it to her mother.
   a. wraps b. counts c. holds d. joins
2. Be ready to play with us .... the parcel game.
   a. seek b. hide c. join d. pass
3. In musical chairs game, the player without a .... is out.
   a. table b. chair c. ball d. music
4. In hide and seek game, the last one left is the ....
   a. winner b. present c. seeker d. parcel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

buy - music – give – present – player

To play pass the parcel game, wrap a small [1] .... and cover it in lots and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and play some[2] .... Players [3] .... the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the [4] .... holding the present takes off one piece of paper.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Musical chairs is an interesting game. To play it, you can run but be ready to sit ! Put some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. After that, play some music. Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out. Take away one chair and play again.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. This text is about " A nice .... ".

   a. trip b. game c. subject d. film

2. The player without a chair is not ....

   a. the loser b. the winner c. out d. far

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What do players do when the music stops ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following.

in which game do you need to run

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN[18] words using the following guiding elements.

"The musical chairs game"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

• How can you play this game ?	Run but be ready to sit.
• What should the players do when the music stops ?	Everyone has to sit down.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 2

▸ Festivals around the world
▸ Language Focus





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

cheese	جبن	New Year	رأس السنة
kite	طائرة ورقية	tomatoes	طماطم
dragon	تنين	monster	وحش
alive	على قيد الحياة	rolling	دحرجة / دوار

Extra vocabulary

envelope	ظرف	festival	احتفال
messy	فوضوي	mud	طين
inside	بالداخل	silly	سخيف
hill	تل / هضبة	yuan	عملة صينية [يوان]
travels	رحلات / سفريات	weird = strange	غريب
traditions	عادات	shape	شكل
even number	رقم زوجي		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
pull	يسحب	pulled
laugh	يضحك	laughed
cover	يغطي	covered
wish	يتمنى	wished

Irregular

Present		Past
fall	يسقط	fell
fly	يطير	flew
throw	يلقي	threw
feel	يشعر	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- run after يطارد
- take part in يشارك في
- look up ينظر لأعلى
- wish you good luck أتمنى لك حظًا سعيدًا
- covered in مغطى بـ
- the rest of بقية
- looked a bit dangerous بدا خطيرًا بعض الشئ

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Festivals around the world	rolling - push	In cheese rolling festival, they push the round cheese down the hill and the person who wins the race, wins the cheese.
	weddings - envelopes	In China, people at weddings and celebrations give the children red envelopes with money inside.
	festival - tomatoes	In La Tomatina festival, they throw old tomatoes at each other.
	kites - monsters	In kite festival, they fly kites shaped like animals, fish, monsters, ... etc.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I like to fly ....
   a. balls b. kites c. cheese d. tomatoes
2. I cut some .... to make salad.
   a. tomatoes b. games c. books d. kites
3. I like to have .... for breakfast.
   a. kite b. cheese c. monster d. wind
4. He fell off his bike, so he was .... in mud.
   a. covered b. colored c. described d. served
5. Her room was .... so her mom helped her clean it.
   a. tidy b. messy c. wonderful d. beautiful
6. I wrote a letter and put it in a/an .... to send it.
   a. hat b. envelope c. door d. desk



II Listening and Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my **travels** and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together. This week I'm looking back at some of the **weird** and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمى دينا وظيفتى أن أخبرك عن رحلاتى وأن أجلب بقية العالم إلى موطنك. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما عرفنا المزيد عن البلدان الأخرى، كلما كان بإمكاننا فهم بعضنا البعض والعيش معًا بشكل أفضل. هذا الأسبوع، ألقى نظرة على بعض التقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التى رأيتها خلال رحلاتى.

Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it ? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but nobody was hurt.



Cheese rolling

لنبدأ بالمملكة المتحدة، لقد كان من أغرب الأشياء التى رأيتها على الإطلاق. انظروا، لقد دفعوا قالب الجبن المستدير إلى أسفل التل وركض مئات الأشخاص وراءها. لماذا فعلوا ذلك ؟ الشخص الذى يفوز بالسباق ، يفوز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكًا (وغريبًا جدًا)، لكنه بدا خطيرًا بعض الشئ. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد بأذى.

The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes. I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck.
The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like, 2 , 4 , 6 , 8 , etc.) because they said this was good luck.



Chinese New Year

التالى كان فى الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. قدم الناس فى حفلات الزفاف والاحتفالات للأطفال والشباب مظاريف حمراء. سألت صديقى عن هذا وأخبرتنى أن هناك نقودًا داخل الظرف وأن هذه طريقتهم فى قول حظ سعيد. عادة ما ينتهي هذا المبلغ من المال برقم زوجي فى النهاية (مثل ٢ ، ٤ ، ٦ ، ٨ ، إلخ) لأنهم قالوا إن هذا يدل علي الحظ السعيد.

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy ! Everybody threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After a few minutes everyone was covered in red tomatoes !
Why do they throw old tomatoes ? For fun !


La Tomatina

لقد استمتعت كثيرًا هنا، وكان يسمى " مهرجان الطماطم" وكان فى إسبانيا. لقد كان فوضويًا جدًا ! ألقى الجميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أى شئ. بعد بضع دقائق كان الجميع مغطى بالطماطم الحمراء ! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة ؟ للمتعة !

This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals. Fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites. It was very difficult !


Kite festival

هذا هو الرابع، كان مهرجان طائرة ورقية جميل. يحدث هذا فى جميع أنحاء العالم، ولكن هذا كان فى الهند. مئات من الناس، صغارًا وكبارًا، حلقوا بطائرتهم الورقية. كانت السماء مليئة بالحيوانات. سمك، وحوش... حاولت أن أطير إحدى الطائرات الورقية. كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية !

Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly, in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

حسنًا، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من المهرجانات التى شاهدتها خلال رحلاتى. رأيت أشخاص يرتدون ملابس ملونة واخرون يأكلون طعام لذيذ، ومنهم من فعل بعض الأشياء السخيفة. الأكثر أهمية فى كل هذه المهرجانات رأيت الكثير من الوجوه المبتسمة السعيدة.

Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معانى الكلمات.

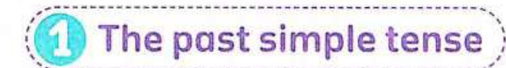
Learn 1. The underlined word "**travels**" means ....
a. festivals b. journeys c. traditions d. monsters

Practice 2. The underlined word "**weird**" means ....
a. silly b. strange c. messy d. alive

III Language focus

Remember :





With most verbs, the past tense is formed by adding –ed, –d or –ied :

A. Regular verbs

inf. +	
	-ed
	-d
	-ied

push → pushed
celebrate → celebrated
study → studied

B. Irregular verbs

Present	meaning	Past	Present	meaning	Past
see	يرى	saw	tell	يخبر	told
put	يضع	put	give	يعطى	gave
fall	يسقط	fell	say	يقول	said
hit	يضرب	hit	go	يذهب	went
win	يفوز	won	have / has	يملك	had
eat	يأكل	ate	wear	يرتدى	wore
throw	يلقى	threw	run	يجرى	ran
read	يقرأ	read	fly	يطير	flew

05 min Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. They .... [study] English with their father yesterday.
2. The cat .... [eat] my fish last week.
3. We .... [has] a party yesterday.
4. I .... [see] a plane last week.
5. We .... [go] to the park last Friday.
6. She .... [is] sad yesterday, but she's happy now.
7. He .... [fall] and hurt his leg last week.
8. Who .... [win] the match yesterday ?
9. She .... [wear] a new dress last Sunday.
10. The horse .... [run] fast and won the race yesterday.

• Help your child remember the past simple tense.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتذكر زمن الماضي البسيط.



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The kite .... up high in the sky last evening.
   a. fly b. flies c. flew d. flying
2. I closed my eyes and ....
   a. ran b. run c. runs d. running
3. I .... the race two months ago.
   a. win b. winning c. won d. wins
4. I .... a book about animals last week.
   a. to read b. reading c. reads d. read
5. I .... some sandwiches for dinner last night.
   a. eat b. eating c. ate d. eats

2 Rhyme القافية

Rhyme : A word that has the same sound or ends with the same sound as another word.

القافية : كلمة لها نفس النطق الصوتى لكلمة اخرى أو تنتهى بنفس النطق الصوتى.

went rhymes with tent

hit rhymes with it

eight rhymes with ate

red rhymes with read

foot rhymes with put

because rhymes with was

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Chinese New Year is in .... and many parts of Asia.
   a. France b. Italy c. Egypt d. China
2. People at celebrations gave the children and young people red ....
   a. kites b. envelopes c. cheese d. tomatoes
3. There was .... inside the envelope.
   a. money b. paper c. a pen d. a cup
4. The amount of money usually had a/an .... number at the end.
   a. single b. even c. good d. bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In cheese .... festival, they push round cheese down the hill.
   a. laughing b. covering c. rolling d. flying
2. In La Tomatina festival, they throw old .... at each other.
   a. cheese b. tomatoes c. kites d. monsters
3. He wrote the letter and put it inside a/an ....
   a. map b. envelope c. hole d. kite
4. This .... is very high. I can't climb it.
   a. festival b. park c. street d. hill

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

live - countries - red - place - travels

My name's Rahma. It's my job to tell you about my (1) .... and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful (2) .... The more we learn about other (3) .... , the better we can understand each other. We can (4) .... together happily.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

There're many festivals around the world. One of the festivals is the kite festival. Hundreds of people fly different shapes of kites, fish and monsters. In cheese rolling festival, they push the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. The person who wins the race, wins the cheese. In La Tomatina festival, people throw tomatoes at each other. They wear some

old clothes. When we look around, everything is red.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. This text is about " .... around the world".
   a. Clothes b. Food c. Festivals d. Traditions
2. In La Tomatina festival, people wear some .... clothes.
   a. new b. old c. sad d. happy

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. In which festival people throw tomatoes at each other ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The beautiful bird .... (fly) away yesterday.
2. I .... (reads) a short story last week.
3. She .... (say) she was late.
4. We .... (eat) lunch at the club yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following.

why do people run down a hill

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN(18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Chinese New Year festival"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • envelopes • friends

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

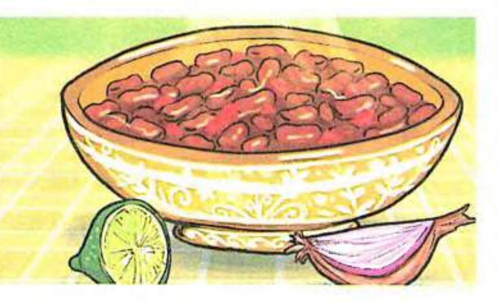
....

....

....

Lesson 3

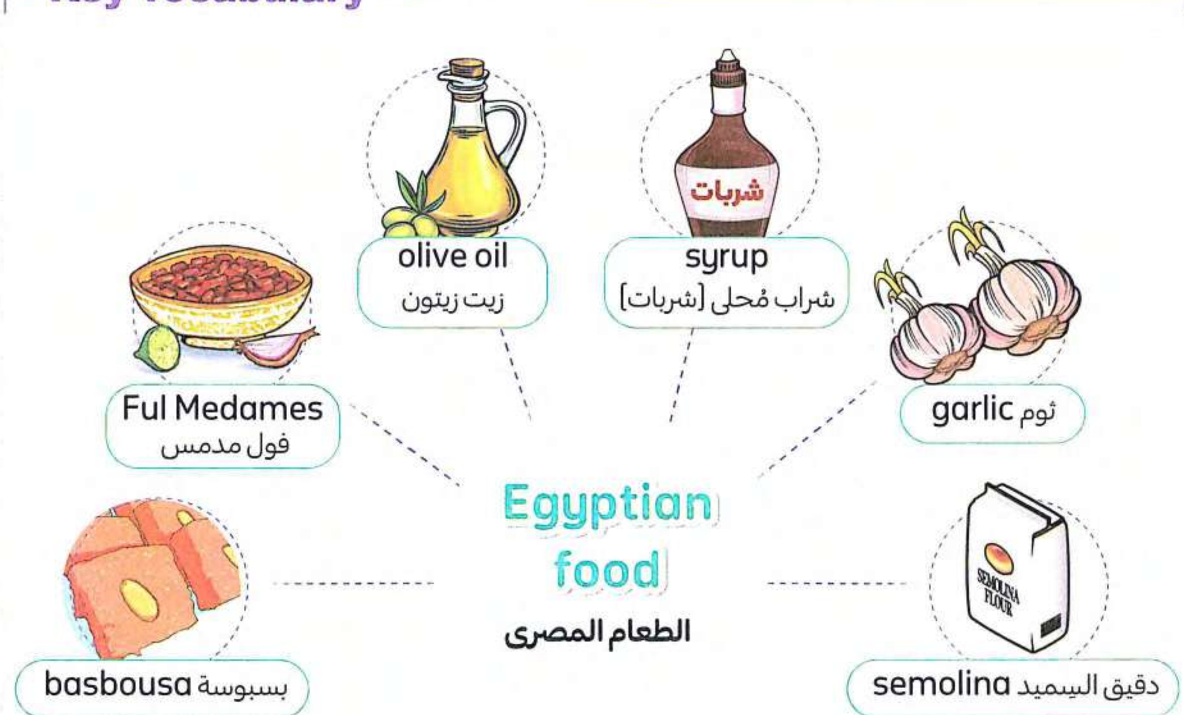
▸ Citizenship
▸ Language focus





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



Extra vocabulary

national	وطنى/قومى	author	مؤلف
history	تاريخ	energy	طاقة
wonderful	رائع	sweet	حلو
rich	غنى / ثرى	helpful	متعاون
culture	ثقافة	hospitable	مضياف - كريم
nature	طبيعة	south	جنوب
Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	east	شرق
prize	جائزة	karate	لعبة الكاراتيه
mountain	جبل	land	أرض
slowly	ببطء	visitors	زائرين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
describe	يصف	described	mean	يقصد	meant
serve	يُقدم / يخدم	served	win	يفوز	won
participate	يشارك	participated			

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- famous for مشهور بـ
- around us حولنا
- It's true that صحيح أن
- under the age of تحت سن
- full of energy ملئ بالطاقة/بالحيوية
- continue to يستمر لـ
- proud of فخور بـ
- How about ... ? ماذا عن ... ؟

Study these definitions ادرس تلك التعريفات

Word الكلمة	Definition التعريف
special	having something different or that nobody else has امتلاك شـئ مختلف أو لا يمتلكه أي شحص آخر
hospitable	friendly and welcoming to guests and visitors الود والترحيب بالضيوف والزوار
serve	to provide food or drinks أن تقدم الطعام أو المشروبات
authors	people who write movies and stories أشخاص تكتب أفلام وقصص
region	part of a country جزء من الدولة
celebrate	to feel proud of أن تشعر بالفخر

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Why is Egypt special ?	celebrate - history	We often celebrate things in our country's history.
	food - wonderful	Egyptian food is wonderful!
	Egyptians - hospitable	Egyptians are helpful and hospitable people.
	desert - lands	About 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

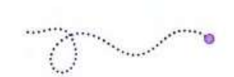
1. Basbousa is a very .... dessert.
   a. salty b. sweet c. hot d. cold
2. I have .... for breakfast.
   a. pens b. toys c. ful medames d. syrup
3. East and .... are directions [اتجاهات].
   a. history b. prize c. south d. karate
4. The Egyptian .... wrote many wonderful books.
   a. authors b. farmers c. vets d. drivers

II Listening and Reading

Look and read. انظر واقرأ.



Why is Egypt special ?

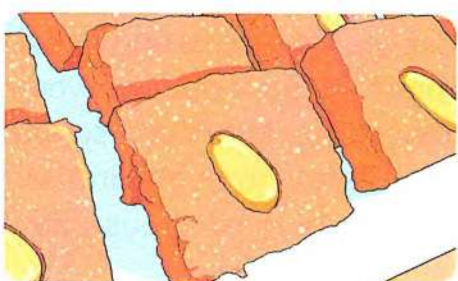


لماذا مصر مميزة ؟

What makes us special ? ما الذى يجعلنا مميزين ؟

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country. Here are some ideas :





غالبًا ما نحتفل بأشياء فى تاريخ بلدنا. إن دولة مثل مصر مشهورة بتاريخها ويجب أن نستمر فى الاحتفال بثقافتها الغنية. دعنا ننظر حولنا، ونتحدث عن الأشياء التى تجعلنا نفخر ببلدنا الجميلة. إليك بعض الأفكار :

The food

Our food can be described with one word : wonderful!
Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.
Maybe you want something sweet ? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.





The people

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

Nature

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.



Culture

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports ! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.



- الطعام : يمكننا وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة : رائع ! ربما الاشهر هو الفول المدمس وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، يُقَدّم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والثوم. ربما تريد شيئًا حلوًا ؟ ماذا عن البسبوسة. كعكة السميد الرقيقة الحلوة بشراب مُحلى.
- الشعب : أكثر من نصف المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. هذا يعنى أننا مليئون بالطاقة. نحن متعاونين مع بعضنا البعض ونحن ودودون للغاية مع الزوار. نحن شعب مضياف جدًا.
- الطبيعة : يعتقد الكثير من الناس أن مصر ليست سوى صحراء. صحيح أن ٩٠٪ من مصر صحراء، لكن لدينا مساحات خضراء أيضًا. بالقرب من النيل هناك أراضى خضراء وجميلة. توجد جبال فى الجنوب والشرق بل وتتساقط ثلوج فى منطقة سيناء.
- الثقافة : ننتج الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. لدينا مؤلفون فازوا بجوائز مهمة. وبالطبع نحن نحب الرياضة ! كل من يحب لعبة الكاراتية يعرف اسم أحد أشهر لاعبى الكاراتية، فريال عبد العزيز.

III Language focus

Suffix -ful

-ful is a suffix means "full of". - اللاحقة -ful هى لاحقة تعنى "ملئ بـ".

We can make an adjective by adding (-ful) to the end of a verb or noun.

- يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة (-ful) فى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم لتحويله إلى صفة.

Adjective suffix

-ful	to be full of a certain quality	He's a careful driver.

Verb / Noun	فعل / اسم	Adjective	صفة
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
wonder	اعجوبة / يتعجب	wonderful	رائع / عجيب
color	يلون / لون	colorful	ملون
help	يساعد / مساعدة	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
care	يعتنى - عناية	careful	حريص - حذر
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم

Note : The letter "y" in "beauty" changed into "i" before we add "-ful".

لاحظ : تم تغيير حرف "y" في كلمة "beauty" الي "i" قبل إضافة اللاحقة "-ful".



Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. It is a .... (beauty) flower.
2. She has a .... (color) dress.
3. The garden is a .... (wonder) place to play football.
4. I like Hatem. He is a .... (help) student.
5. Milk and cheese are very .... (use) for your teeth.
6. The baby is sleeping, so be .... (care).

• Help your child to change the given verbs/nouns into adjectives. - ساعد طفلك أن يحول الأفعال/ الأسماء المعطاة إلى صفات.

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt makes a lot of ....
   a. cartoons b. songs c. plays d. movies
2. We have .... who won important prizes.
   a. authors b. vets c. archaeologists d. doctors
3. We love .... !
   a. places b. jobs c. sports d. food
4. Ferial Abdelaziz is a very famous .... player
   a. tennis b. karate c. volleyball d. handball

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egyptian people are .... , they are very friendly to all people.
   a. boring b. bad c. lazy d. hospitable
2. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with ....
   a. gas b. garlic c. syrup d. tea
3. We are .... of our father. He got many prizes.
   a. proud b. worried c. afraid d. angry
4. Many Egyptian authors won important ....
   a. games b. sweets c. prizes d. rules

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hospitable - Egyptian – visitors – lands – energy

More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. Egyptians are full of (1) .... They are helpful to each other. They are very friendly to (2) .... and guests. They are very (3) .... people. (4) .... people are wonderful.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our Egyptian food is **wonderful**! The most famous food is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic. A lot of Egyptians have Ful Medames for breakfast. When you want something sweet, you should try basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup. Egypt is famous for its delicious food.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Ful Medames is .... with olive oil and garlic.

a. played b. served c. completed d. watched

2. The underlined word "**wonderful**" means very ....

a. bad b. salty c. good d. hot

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What can you eat when you want something sweet ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I have a .... [pain] headache. My head hurts.

2. Can you .... [helpful] me, please ?

3. I .... [useful] scissors to cut paper.

4. They like to .... [colorful] their faces.

6 Punctuate the following.

egypt is famous for its history

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN[18] words using the following guiding elements.

Why Egypt is special

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • helpful • hospitable

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 4 & 5
- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

invitation	دعوة	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد
information	معلومات	missing	مفقود
guest	ضيف	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

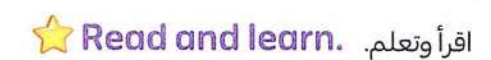
list	قائمة	remember	يتذكر
sports day	يوم رياضي	reply	رد/ يرد
invite	يدعو	yard	ساحة
whole	كل	prepare	يجهز

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- See you then ! أراك لاحقًا !
- I hope you can come. أتمنى أن تستطيع الحضور.
- It'll be fun ! سيكون ذلك ممتعًا !
- Please come to ... من فضلك احضر إلى ...
- RSVP برجاء الرد

II Writing

⭐ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.


Information you need to know in invitations

معلومات تحتاج أن تعرفها في الدعوات

1. The friend's name and address	اسم وعنوان الصديق
2. The date and time of the party	تاريخ ووقت الحفلة
3. The reason for the invitation	سبب الدعوة
4. What to bring	ماذا تجلب
5. What to wear	ماذا ترتدي
6. How to reply to the invitation	كيفية الرد على الدعوة

Dear Ahmed,
I'm having a birthday party next Thursday at my house. Can you come ?
I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.
When : Thursday, August 12th
What time ? 3 pm - 5 pm
Where : 12 Dene Road [my house!] [next to the library]
What to wear ? Something blue
RSVP : 9 768 324 590
I hope you can come.



عزيزى أحمد
سأقيم حفلة عيد ميلاد الخميس المقبل في منزلى. هل تستطيع أن تأتى ؟ أنا أدعو الفصل بأكمله لذلك سيتواجد كل أصدقاؤنا. أريد أن ألعب بعض الألعاب الجماعية لذا أحضر بعض الموسيقى حتى نتمكن من لعب الكراسى الموسيقية.
- الزمان : الخميس ١٢ أغسطس
- ما الوقت ؟ ٣ مساءً - ٥ مساءً
- المكان : ١٢ شارع دينى [منزلى !] [بجانب المكتبة]
- ماذا ترتدى ؟ شئ أزرق
- رجاء الرد : ٩٧٦٨٣٢٤٥٩٠
- أتمنى أن تتمكن من الحضور.



Pop Quiz on writing

Write and decorate your invitation. Write [18-24] words.

....

....

....

....

....

Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

What is the meaning of RSVP ?

The RSVP meaning comes from the first letter of each word of the French phrase [répondez s'il vous plaît] actually means "please reply".

الاختصار RSVP تأتى من أول حرف من كل كلمة من العبارة الفرنسية (répondez s'il vous plaît) بمعنى "برجاء الرد".

• Help your child read and identify the meaning of RSVP.

- ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ ويتعرف على معنى RSVP.

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Mazen sent me a/an .... to his birthday party.
   a. invitation b. invention c. transportation d. celebration
2. We should be hospitable with .... who visit us.
   a. insects b. robots c. guests d. players
3. I can't find my keys, they are ....
   a. preparing b. hoping c. coming d. missing
4. I can't get to his home. I don't have the ....
   a. address b. dress c. list d. yard

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

invited - party - game - musical - music

I'm having a party next Thursday at my house. We can play (1) .... chairs game. So, I'll play some (2) .... .Please, come to my (3) .... It'll be fun ! I (4) .... all my friends. We'll wear something green. There will be nice games. See you then.

3 Punctuate the following.

it'll be fun

....

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN(18) words using the following guiding elements.

"A birthday party"

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • games • music

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

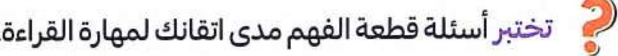
....

....

....



Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.




تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد معنى مفردة لغوية أو عبارة فى نص.

مفتاح الحل بعد قراءة النص يمكنك أن تخمن معنى الكلمة المشار إليها من خلال الجملة التى ذكرت فيها.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

To play pass the parcel game, **wrap** a small present and cover it in lots of paper. The players sit in a circle and play some music. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present **takes off** one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

شرح الحل تقرأ الفقرة جيدًا لتحديد معانى الكلمات المستهدفة.

- wrap يغلف / يغطى
- take off يزيل

1. The underlined word "**wrap**" means ....

a. ask
b. cut
c. cover
d. throw

2. The underlined phrase "**takes off**" means ....

a. keeps
b. unwraps
c. covers
d. passes

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

No celebration is complete without one of party games. Party games are very **famous**. When children **get together**, they often play games. We like to get presents. In pass the parcel game, the winner that unwraps the present gets it. In the musical chairs game, the player without a chair is out. In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to find the players.

1. The underlined word "**famous**" means of ....

a. popular
b. amazing
c. unknown
d. old

2. The underlined phrase "**get together**" means ....

a. leave
b. meet
c. run
d. travel

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية] و [دعوة عيد ميلاد] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1
Review your vocabulary

▶ **Write the meaning :**

Musical chairs game

- يجرى ....
- لاعبين ....
- يتوقف ....
- يسحب / يأخذ ....
- بدون ....
- يجلس ....

A birthday invitation

- عيد ميلاد ....
- يأتى ....
- يرتدى ....
- يدعو ....
- ألعاب جماعية ....
- أصدقاء ....

Step 2
Sentences

▶ **Complete the sentences :**

1. Put out 5 chairs if you have 6 ....

2. Play some music and the players .... around the chairs.

3. When the music .... , everyone sits down.

4. The player .... a chair is out.

1. I am having a .... party next Sunday.

2. Can you .... to my party ?

3. You should .... something blue.

4. I am .... the whole class.

Step 3
Topics

▶ **Write paragraphs using the sentences :**

"Musical chairs game"

....
....
....
....
....
....

"A birthday invitation"

....
....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة.
قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [٢٤ جملة].

1 Party Games

No celebration is complete without one of party games.[1] When children get together, they often play games.[2] We like to get presents.[3] In pass the parcel game, the winner that unwraps the present gets it.[4] In the musical chairs game, the player without a chair is out.[5] In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to find the players.[6]

2 Egyptian food

The Egyptian food can be described with one word : wonderful.[7] The most famous is Ful Medames.[8] It's beans cooked slowly.[9] Ful Medames is served with olive oil and garlic.[10] Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.[11] It's very delicious.[12]

3 Festivals around the world

There're many festivals around the world.[13] The kite festival is to fly different shapes of kites.[14] The way the wind pulls the kite, it feels alive.[15] In cheese rolling festival, they start running and falling.[16] In La Tomatina festival, people throw tomatoes at each other.[17] It is very messy.[18]

4 Birthday invitation

I'm having a birthday party next week.[19] I'm inviting all my friends.[20] I want to play some party games.[21] My house is at 12 El Salam Street next to the school.[22] I hope all of my friends can come.[23] I will be happy.[24]



TEST YOUR SKILLS

What makes us special



If you got ● you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with words in the box.

what - hospitable - history - wonderful

Maged : Hi, Omar! What is Egypt famous for ?

Omar : Egypt is famous for its (1)................... .

Maged : That's right. We're proud of our culture.

Omar : Egyptian people are also very (2)................... .

Maged : How about Egyptian food ?

Omar : It can be described with one word : (3)................... .

My Language

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We.................. (be) in the park last weekend.
2. I swam in the sea and.................. (have) fun.
3. I.................. (fly) my kite last week.
4. I.................. (eats) pizza last night.
5. He helps many people. He is.................. (help).

My Writing

3 Write an email of TWENTY FOUR words about :

Party games

New Message

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

My Project

4 Make a poster for your birthday party.

....

....

....


قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.

Review on Unit 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة التاسعة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

parcel	طرد	winner	فائز
present	هدية	seeker	باحث
wrap	يغلف	rolling	دحرجة / دوار
music	موسيقى	alive	على قيد الحياة
player	لاعب	syrup	شراب مُحلى
hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	semolina	دقيق السميد
envelope	ظرف	culture	ثقافة
traditions	عادات	wonderful	رائع
monster	وحش	hospitable	مضياف / كريم
festival	احتفال	visitors	زائرين
proud	فخور		
karate	لعبة الكاراتيه		

Language

suffix -ful

-ful is a suffix means "full of". -ful هى لاحقة تعنى "ملئ بـ".

We can make an adjective by adding [-ful] to the end of a verb or noun.

- يمكننا إضافة اللاحقة [-ful] فى نهاية الفعل أو الاسم لتحويله إلى صفة.

-ful	to be full of a certain quality	He's a careful driver.

Verb / Noun	فعل / اسم	adjective	صفة
beauty	جمال	beautiful	جميل
wonder	أعجوبة / يتعجب	wonderful	رائع / عجيب
color	يلون/ لون	colorful	ملون
help	يساعد / مساعدة	helpful	متعاون
use	يستخدم	useful	مفيد
care	يعتنى - عناية	careful	حريص - حذر
pain	ألم	painful	مؤلم

Test 5 on Unit 9

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Egyptian .... can be described with one word : wonderful.
   a. water   b. air   c. sky   d. food
2. The most famous food is ....
   a. Ful Medames   b. chicken   c. pizza   d. burger
3. Ful Medames is served with olive oil and ....
   a. onions   b. tomatoes   c. garlic   d. carrots
4. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina .... with syrup.
   a. cake   b. cookies   c. lettuce   d. beans

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... my sister's birthday last week.
   a. celebrated   b. ate   c. drank   d. read
2. We are proud of our country. It has a .... culture.
   a. poor   b. rich   c. bad   d. ugly
3. The girl was delighted when she .... the present and saw the gold ring.
   a. closed   b. threw   c. unwrapped   d. covered
4. The .... closes his eyes, counts then tries to find the players in hide and seek game.
   a. parcel   b. seeker   c. student   d. music

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

reading - culture - famous - proud - color

I'm Lamiaa. I like (1) .... about the culture of different countries. We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is (2) .... for its history and culture. We should continue to celebrate its rich (3) .... We should be (4) .... of our beautiful country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Nature in Egypt is very wonderful. Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90 % of Egypt is desert, but we also have green

lands. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. This text is about " .... in Egypt".
   a. Monuments b. Nature c. Players d. People

2. We have green areas in Egypt because of the ....
   a. Nile b. desert c. mountains d. sand

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. Where does it snow in Egypt ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. The fruit is a .... [use] food.
2. Dad .... [reading] a story for me yesterday.
3. Butterflies are .... [color].
4. I .... [go] to school yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following.

i'm having a birthday party next saturday.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Hide and seek game

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • player • seeker

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 6 on Unit 9

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Sports Day is in the school ....
   a. library b. yard c. laboratory d. classroom
2. It is on ....
   a. Friday b. Tuesday c. Monday d. Sunday
3. We wear T-shirts and ....
   a. skirts b. pants c. shorts d. trousers
4. We eat lots of ....
   a. cookies b. fish c. ice cream d. cakes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to .... the other players.
   a. find b. hide c. wrap d. join [قنا - قنا ٢٠٢٣]
2. La Tomatina is one of the .... festivals. It's very strange.
   a. weird b. famous c. known d. popular
   [الإسكندرية - المنتزه ٢٠٢٣]
3. The .... brought nice presents with them in the birthday party.
   a. games b. guests c. seekers d. robots
   [الجيزة - ٦ أكتوبر ٢٠٢٣]
4. I played .... with my cousins.
   a. food b. games c. jobs d. drink
   [الجيزة - امبابة ٢٠٢٣]

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

guests - helpful - under - full - unkind

Egypt is a great country. It is famous for its history. More than half of Egyptians are (1) .... the age of 30. Egyptians are (2) .... of energy. They are (3) .... to each other. They are very friendly to visitors and (4) .... They are very hospitable people. Egyptian people are wonderful.

[القاهرة - الشرابية ٢٠٢٣]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate our friend Nader's birthday. We played hide and seek game. Nader was the seeker and we were the players. He closed his eyes and counted to ten. We hid and Nader tried to find us. Nader found Mona and she became the next seeker. Ali was the **winner** because he was the last one left. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

[البحيرة - المحمودية ٢٠٢٣]

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We had a picnic ....
   a. yesterday b. last week c. on Monday d. tomorrow
2. The underlined word "**winner**" is the opposite of ....
   a. poor b. rich c. player d. loser

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did they celebrate at the park ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. We .... [see] a show yesterday.
2. Mr Ayman is a .... [help] teacher.
3. I was late, so I .... [run] to school.
4. My parents gave me a .... [wonder] present.

6 Punctuate the following.

hamdi can help me [المنوفية - السادات ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your birthday party

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements : • party games • fun

[الدقهلية - شربين ٢٠٢٣]

....

....

....

....



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

▸ Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. We celebrate things in our country's .... [desert – sea – history]
2. Egypt is .... for its history. [bad – famous – unknown]
3. We should be proud of our beautiful .... [paper – country – wood]

▸ Read and complete the dialogue.

How - count - wind - many

Nour : How (1) .... kites can you see ?
Youssef : There are a lot of kites. I can't (2) .... them.
Nour : (3) .... does the kite fly ?
Youssef : The (4) .... moves it.

▸ Choose the correct answer.

1. He is sitting on the ....
   a. chair b. game c. music d. TV
2. When the music stops, everyone .... in musical chairs game.
   a. stands up b. sleeps c. sits down d. eats
3. Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim ....
   a. subject b. festival c. job d. game
4. We .... a train to Luxor last weekend.
   a. catch b. caught c. catching d. catches
5. It was grandpa's birthday, so we .... with a big cake.
   a. celebrate b. celebrated c. celebrates d. celebrating

▸ Reorder.

1. play - want to - I - party - games.
....
2. did - the children - What - hear ?
....
3. people - We – are - very - hospitable.
....
4. love - We - give - to - presents.
....
5. do - throw - Why - people - tomatoes ?
....

GENERAL REVISION on Units 7,8 & 9

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات [٧ ، ٨ ، ٩]

I Vocabulary

oasis	واحة	mice	فئران	delighted/pleased	مسرور
mountain	جبل	gate	بوابة	smoke	دخان
forest	غابة	desert	صحراء	backpack	حقيبة ظهر
river	نهر	village	قرية	kind	لطيف
building	مبنى	electricity	كهرباء	gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالوقود
reptiles	زواحف	excited	متحمس	curious	فضولي / محب للاستطلاع

a piece of	قطعة من	dessert	حلوى ما بعد الطعام	poem	قصيده
a packet of	عبوة من	picnic	نزهه خلوية	soap	صابون
a bar of	قالب من	represent	يمثل	beach	شاطئ
a carton of	علبة كرتون من	festival	احتفال	fast	يصوم
a bottle of	زجاجة من	cookies	كعك محلى	sunset	غروب الشمس
a slice of	شريحة من	lovely	محبوب	celebrate	يحتفل
cheese	جبن	trip	رحلة قصيره	mosque	مسجد
kahk	كعك	deep	عميق	decorate	يزين

player	لاعب	basbousa	بسبوسة	pass	يمرر
tent	خيمة	syrup	شراب محلى	hill	تل
kite	طائرة ورقية	semolina	دقيق سميد	parcel	طرد / هديه
wrap	يغلف	winner	فائز	hold	يمسك
party	حفلة	wide	واسع	hospitable	مضياف / كريم
guest	ضيف	monster	وحش	author	مؤلف
hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	envelope	ظرف		

II Language

The Past Simple Tense

A. Regular verbs : Subj. + inf. + d / ed / ied ....


I played football yesterday.

B. Irregular verbs :

Subj. + [التصريف الثانى للفعل] + ...

We went to the beach last summer.

C. V. to "be" :

I , He , She , It → was / wasn't
We , They , You → were / weren't


I was happy last night.


They were in the park last week.

Past Simple "Irregular verbs"

go → went
see → saw
throw → threw
wear → wore
read → read
tell → told

suffix

Adding - ful to the end of a verb or a noun to make an adjective.

(–ful) is a suffix means "full of"

- care → careful
- pain → painful
- beauty → beautiful
- color → colorful
- help → helpful
- use → useful

GENERAL EXERCISES

on Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
2. My friend gave me a .... on my birthday.
   a. rail b. present c. forest d. test
3. There are a lot of wild animals in the ....
   a. beach b. forest c. school d. lake
4. Ali is our .... He lives next door.
   a. neighbor b. farmer c. player d. seeker

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

winter - spring - dried fish - parks - Egyptians

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. Sham El-Nessim is celebrated by (1) .... It's a festival that celebrates the start of (2) .... We eat (3) .... and green onions during Sham El-Nessim. We go to the (4) .... with our families to have picnics.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .... (play) football at the club last week.
2. Waleed has a bar .... (off) chocolate.
3. He .... (don't) find his ball yesterday.
4. She fell down because she wasn't .... (care).

4 Punctuate the following.

how many kites can you see

....

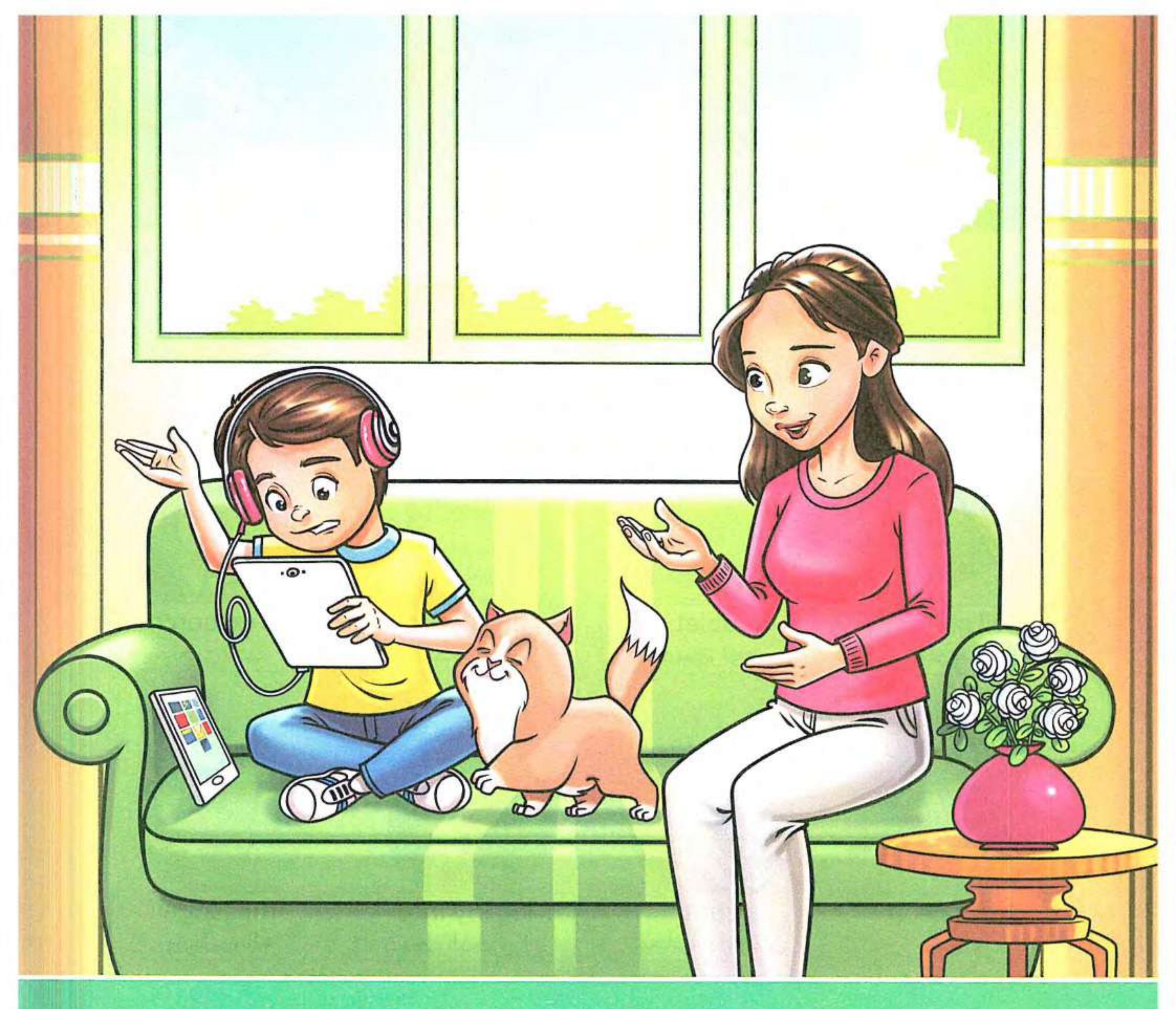


THEME

I'm a responsible person







Unit 10 I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتي

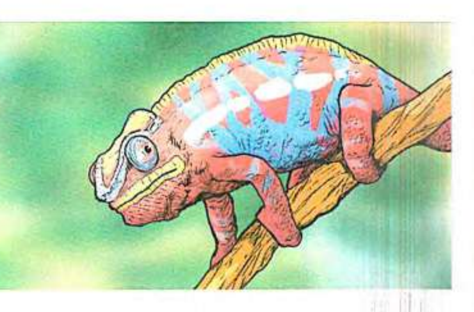
Aims of Unit ten : الأهداف العامة للوحدة العاشرة :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about social media.
  - استمع، اقرأ، ابحث واكتب عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي.
- give advice with should.
  - أعطي نصيحة باستخدام (should).
- learn and say words that start with un-.
  - أتعلم وأقول كلمات تبدأ بـ (un-).
- read and listen to a short story.
  - اقرأ واستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- write about the pros and cons of computer games.
  - اكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- research and make a leaflet.
  - ابحث وأصنع نشرة.

Lesson 1

An interesting research





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



cell phone
هاتف خلوى (محمول)



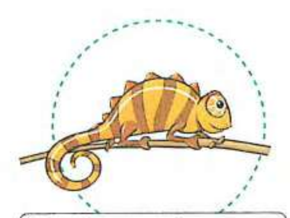
tablet
كمبيوتر لوحى



password
كلمة المرور



do research
يُجْرى بحث



chameleon
حرباء



chat
محادثة / يدردش



log in / into
يسجل الدخول إلى



message
يرسل رسالة

Extra vocabulary

website	موقع إلكترونى	library	مكتبة
own	خاص به / خاصته / يملك	idea	فكرة
information	معلومات	pictures	صور
presentation	عرض تقديمى	call	اتصال

Adjectives

great	عظيم / رائع	nice	لطيف
interesting	شيق / رائع	amazing	مدهش
respectful	متسم بالاحترام		

Did You know ?

• The first call from a cell phone was made in 1973. We check our cell phones about 150 times a day.

- تم إجراء أول مكالمة من هاتف محمول فى عام ١٩٧٣. نتفحص هواتفنا الخلوية حوالى ١٥٠ مرة فى اليوم.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
create	ينشىء/ينتج	created	say	يقول	said
change	يغير	changed	know	يعرف	knew
copy	ينسخ	copied	find	يجد	found
plan	يخطط	planned	write	يكتب	wrote

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- get information يحصل على معلومات
- all around في كل مكان
- Hooray! هتاف للتعبير عن الفرحة [مرحى !]
- the same ... as نفس الشيء ... مثل
- make a presentation يقدم عرض تقديمى
- do homework يقوم بأداء الوجب المنزلى

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Doing research	research - information	To do research, we need some information.
	log into library	I logged into the library website to get information.
	create - website	I created a password to get information from the website.
	copy	I don't copy information.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I use the .... to make calls.
   a. computer b. cell phone c. radio d. television
2. I use my .... to do my homework online.
   a. book b. notebook c. bag d. tablet
3. I sent a .... to my friend to help me.
   a. message b. cat c. school d. color
4. I go to the .... to read books for my research.
   a. cinema b. library c. park d. garden

II Listening and Reading



Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



What are you doing, Dalia?

ماذا تفعلين يا داليا ؟



I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into this library website and I created a password to get information.

أنا أقوم بأداء واجبي المنزلي بخصوص الحرابي. إنهم ممتعون جدًا! لقد قمت بتسجيل الدخول إلى موقع المكتبة وقمت بإنشاء كلمة مرور للحصول على معلومات.



What does it say?

ماذا تقول؟



Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

تغير الحرابي لونهم. يكونوا نفس لون المكان الذي يتواجدون فيه.



Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو! هذا مثير للاهتمام! ماذا أيضًا؟



They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. But I need to do more research. I want to message Yara and chat with her. She knows some great websites.

لديهم عيون رائعة ويمكنهم الرؤية في كل مكان حولهم. لكنني بحاجة إلى إجراء المزيد من البحث. أريد مراسلة يارا والتحدث إليها. إنها تعرف بعض المواقع الإلكترونية الرائعة.



Are you making a presentation about chameleons?

هل ستقدمين عرضًا تقديميًا عن الحرابي؟



Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

نعم، سأقدم عرضًا مع يارا. أحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الكثير من المواقع الإلكترونية والعثور على بعض الصور الجميلة.



Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكري أن تتسمي بالاحترام. لا تنسخي المعلومات. ابحثي عن أفكار واكتبي كلماتك الخاصة.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last week, Hani had homework about ....
   a. lizards b. hippos c. lions d. dogs
2. Hani logged into the .... website.
   a. history b. songs c. library d. school
3. Hani created a ....
   a. password b. project c. game d. toy
4. He did research on his ....
   a. phone b. tablet c. computer d. television

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... are amazing. They can change color easily.
   a. Lions b. Chameleons c. Turtles d. Crocodiles
2. I always get information online to .... my homework.
   a. make b. look c. ask d. do
3. I use strong .... to keep my phone safe.
   a. library b. password c. idea d. presentation
4. I use my cell phone to .... with my friends.
   a. chat b. copy c. create d. say

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cell phone -friend - made - logged - message

Last week, I had some homework about chameleons. I (1) .... into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my (2) ...., Yara. I sent her a (3) .... about the information. We had a chat to plan the presentation. She did research on her (4) .... because she can't use a tablet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into the library website by creating a password. I could get information.

Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. But I need to do more research. I want to message Reem and chat with her. She knows some great websites.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about "........................".

a. Lizards b. Camels c. Chameleons d. Birds

2. Chameleons' .... see all around.

a. ears b. nose c. eyes d. legs

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did the writer log into the library website ?

....

4. How do you think the library website help the writer ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

what are you doing, Reham

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Chameleons

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- color
- eyes

....

....

....

....

....

....

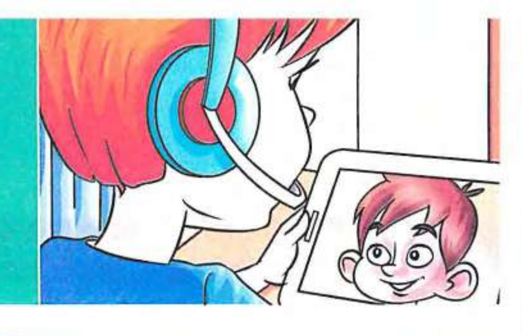
....

....

....

Lesson 2

- Staying Safe Online
- Language Foucs



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	secret	سر / سرى	tag	شعار / إشارة / يلحق / يلصق
device	جهاز	bully	يتنمر / متنمر	personal	شخصى

Extra vocabulary

creative	مبدع	stupid	أحمق	online	متصل بالإنترنت
scary	مخيف	late	متأخر	strong	قوى
pros	إيجابيات	problem	مشكلة	safe	آمن
cons	سلبيات	thoughts	أفكار	sports center	مركز رياضى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	bully	يتنمر	bullied
contact	يتصل	contacted	accept to	يوافق أن	accepted to

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- turn off — يطفئ / يغلق
- find information for — يجد معلومات لـ
- be a friend — كُن صديق
- check with an adult — يتحقق بمساعدة شخص بالغ
- make new friends — يكون صداقات جديدة
- Be creative. — كُن مبدع.

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Social media	share - fun	We use social media to share ideas, information and have fun.
	pros - cons	Social media has pros and cons.
	stay safe	You should stay safe online.
	shouldn't - bully	You shouldn't be a bully online.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Using modern devices has .... and cons.

a. pros b. books c. prizes d. prices

2. I don't want anyone to know about it. It's a ....

a. secret b. season c. class d. device

3. Try to be .... and think about new ideas.

a. scary b. creative c. nervous d. stupid

II Listening and Reading



Wael, you know I started at the new school?

وائل، أتعلم أنى بدأت فى المدرسة الجديدة ؟



Yes? Is it nice?

نعم ؟ هل هذا امر جيد ؟



Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.

نعم، لكن لدى مشكلة مع التنمر عبر الإنترنت. كان هناك ولد فى صفى، شريف الذى كان يرسل لى رسائل.



What did he say?

ماذا قال ؟



He said I was stupid and no one liked me.

قال إننى غبى ولم يحبنى أحد.



That's horrible! Did you tell someone?

هذا مروع! هل أخبرت أحدًا ؟



Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.

نعم أخبرت ابي ، لقد ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث إلى معلمتى. أطلعت معلمتى على رسائل شريف.



What did your teacher do ?

ماذا فعلت معلمتك ؟



She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

تحدثت إلى شريف ووالدى شريف. لقد أوقفوا التنمر جميعًا. قالوا لا يجب أن أتحدث مع شريف عبر الإنترنت.



And Sherif ?

وشريف ؟



He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now–keep the messages and tell adult quickly.

قال لى انه آسف. لكننى أشعر بسعادة أكبر الآن!
أعرف الآن ما يجب على فعله حيال التنمر عبر الإنترنت - احتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا بسرعة.



That's really cool! When are you coming to see me ?

هذا رائع حقًا! متى سوف تأتى لترانى ؟

 **Listen, read and learn.** استمع، اقرأ وتعلم.

"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

"وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى" هى عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار، الخواطر والمعلومات والاستمتاع.



Pros and cons of social media
إيجابيات وسلبيات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى



1. You can have fun. تستطيع أن تمرح.
2. You can talk to friends and family. يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.
3. You can find information for your homework. يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلى.
4. You can be creative. يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا.
5. You can play games. يمكنك ممارسة الألعاب.
6. You can learn interesting things. يمكنك تعلم أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام.

1. People you don't know can contact you. يمكن للأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.
2. You can share photos. يمكنك مشاركة الصور.
3. People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to. يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة إليك فى صور عندما لا تريدهم أن يفعلوا ذلك.
4. People can take your personal information. يمكن لأشخاص أن يأخذوا معلوماتك الشخصية.
5. Some people can bully you. يمكن لبعض الناس أن يتنمروا عليك.

⭐ **Read and learn.** اقرأ وتعلم.

Staying safe online
البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت





- You should accept to be friends only with people you know.
  يجب أن تقبل صداقات من أشخاص تعرفهم فقط.
- You should keep your password secret.
  يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية كلمة المرور الخاصة بك.
- You should keep your personal information secret.
  يجب عليك الحفاظ على سرية معلوماتك الشخصية.

- You shouldn't make new friends online.
  لا يجب عليك تكوين صداقات جديدة عبر الإنترنت.
- You shouldn't give your password to anyone who asks.
  لا يجب أن تعطى كلمة المرور الخاصة بك لأى شخص يسأل عنها.
- You shouldn't tell everyone your birthday and your phone number.
  لا يجب عليك أن تخبر الجميع بعيد ميلادك ورقم هاتفك.



III Language Focus

Giving advice

1 Affirmative form Subject + should يجب أن + inf. مصدر الفعل .

- We use "should" to say what is the right thing to do.
  نستخدم "should" للتحدث عن الشئ الصحيح للقيام به.



I should turn my phone off at night.
يجب علىَ غلق هاتفى ليلًا.

2 Negative form   Subject + shouldn't لا يجب أن + inf. مصدر الفعل.

- We use "shouldn't" to say what isn't the right thing to do.

نستخدم "shouldn't" للتحدث عن شئ غير صحيح لا ينبغى القيام به.



You shouldn't use your phone late at night.

لا ينبغى عليك استخدام هاتفك فى وقت متأخر من الليل.

Note : shouldn't = should not



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You .... [shouldn't] be careful.
2. You should .... [studied] hard for the exam.
3. You shouldn't .... [threw] the paper here.
4. You .... [shouldn't] help your friends.
5. You should .... [keeping] your room clean.
6. You shouldn't .... [sleeps] late.
7. You .... [shouldn't] eat healthy food.
8. You shouldn't .... [uses] your mobile at the classroom.
9. You .... [should] be late for school.
10. They .... [shouldn't] keep their personal information secret.



2 Choose the correct answer from a , b, c or d.

1. I .... give my phone number to my friends only.
   a. should   b. not should   c. shouldn't   d. should to
2. He's fifteen. He .... drive a car.
   a. should to   b. shouldn't   c. should   d. shouldn't to
3. You should .... the doctor when you are sick.
   a. saw   b. to see   c. see   d. sees
4. You .... smoke. It's bad for your health.
   a. should   b. shouldn't to   c. shouldn't   d. must

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You can play .... online.
   a. plays   b. songs   c. games   d. music
2. Some people can .... you when you are on social media.
   a. help   b. bully   c. kill   d. feed
3. They can take your personal ....
   a. information   b. brush   c. tool   d. book
4. You should keep your .... secret.
   a. address   b. birthday   c. password   d. name

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's .... that people can bully you online.
   a. good   b. scary   c. nice   d. interesting
2. We use .... to share ideas, information and have fun online.
   a. classroom   b. social media   c. street   d. sports center
3. You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
   a. accept   b. contact   c. share   d. turn
4. The computer is a great ...., it helps many people do their work.
   a. toy   b. device   c. center   d. problem

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

friends - stay - tell - password - secret

You should keep your password secret. You shouldn't (1) .... everyone your phone number . You should accept to be (2) .... only with people you know. You should use a strong (3) .... You should (4) .... safe online.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, I wasn't very happy with my friend. My friend tagged me in a photo and it showed on my social media page. When I logged in, I saw the photo. I was buying a present for my mom for her birthday and it was a surprise! I talked to my other friend and he said, "You should change your settings so you can check photos you are tagged in!" and he showed me how. Now I'm very happy because I can choose which photos **appear** on my page!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The writer was buying a present for his ....
   a. brother   b. sister   c. mom   d. dad

2. The underlined word "**appear**" is the opposite of "........................".

a. dislike b. disappear c. disappointed d. disagree

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. What did the writer's friend do ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You .... [shouldn't] listen to your teachers.
2. You should .... [uses] a strong password.
3. You shouldn't .... [talks] to people you don't know.
4. You .... [should] run at the classroom.

6 Punctuate the following.

some people can bully you

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN[18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"How to stay safe online"

Guiding elements :

- password
- personal information

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3 ▸ Reading



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

neighbor	جار	restaurant	مطعم
unhealthy	غير صحي	computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر

Extra vocabulary

outside	بالخارج	apartment	شقة سكنية
the same	نفس الشيء	children	أطفال
problem	مشكلة	together	معًا / سويًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
ask	يسأل	asked
answer	يجيب	answered
stop	يتوقف/يمنع	stopped
agree	يوافق	agreed

Irregular

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met
is	يكون	was
say	يقول	said
come	يأتي	came
understand	يفهم	understood

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- What's the matter? ما الأمر؟
- have fun يستمتع
- would love to ... يود أن ...
- go outside يذهب للخارج
- That's a lovely idea. إنها فكرة رائعة.

Main points on Listening and Reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

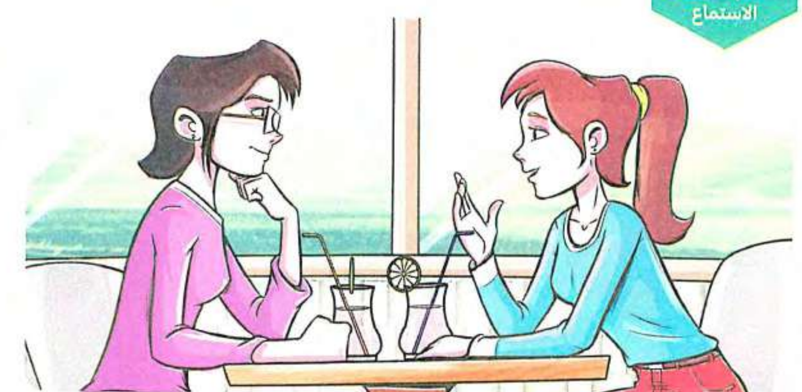
Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
How two neighbors helped each other	neighbor - restaurant	Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant.
	children - games	The children love playing computer games.
	go - the park	The children can go to the park together.

II Reading

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

How two neighbors helped each other
كيف ساعد اثنان من الجيران بعضهما بعض



Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad. Hadeer asked, 'What's the matter, my friend?' Rania answered, 'It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do.'

Hadeer said, 'Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really **unhealthy**. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.'

Rania said, 'Yes, I agree.'

Hadeer said, 'Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun.'

Rania said, 'That's a **lovely** idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!'

Determine the meaning of words.
حدد معنى الكلمات.

Learn 1. The underlined word "**unhealthy**" means .... for heath.
a. good b. well c. bad d. hot

Practice 2. The underlined word "**lovely**" means ....
a. wonderful b. boring c. ugly d. tired

التقت هدير بجارتها رانيا فى المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة. سألت هدير : "ما الأمر يا صديقتى؟" أجابت رانيا : "إنهم أطفالى، نانسى ونادر. إنهم يحبون لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. إنهم لا يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية. لا يخرجون. لا أعرف ماذا أفعل". قالت هدير : "نعم إنها مشكلة. طارق، ابنى، هو مثلهم. غالبًا ما يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. هذا غير صحى حقًا. ولكن يجب أن يتوقف الأطفال عن اللعب بعد ساعة واحدة. يجب عليهم فعل أشياء أخرى. يجب أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. يجب أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة. قالت رانيا : "نعم، أوافق". قالت هدير : "لنجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع الأصدقاء. سيحب طارق أن يلعب أكثر مع نادر. هل يستطيع نادر أن يأتى إلى شقتنا ؟ يمكنهم اللعب معًا والاستمتاع. قالت رانيا : "هذه فكرة جميلة. ويمكنهم الذهاب إلى الحديقة معًا. شكرًا لكى يا هدير !"



III Language

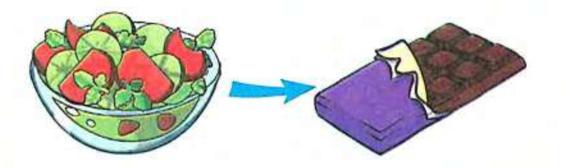
Prefix un- = not

un– is a prefix means not. هى بادئة تعنى "غير". **un–**

We add "**un–**" at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.

نضع البادئة "**un–**" فى بداية الكلمة لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

healthy unhealthy happy unhappy











Pop Quiz on Language



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Smoking isn't good for our health. It's very ....

a. healthy b. unhealthy c. kind d. good

2. He lost the match. He is ....

a. unhappy b. happy c. well d. good

3. My mom......................... the present to show it to me.

a. wrapped b. unwrapped c. locked d. closed

2 Give the opposite of the words using the prefix "un-".

1. kind → ....
2. clear → ....
3. tidy → ....
4. usual → ....
5. finished → ....
6. like → ....

Notes for parents

- Help your child learn about the prefix un-.
1. Ask your child to choose the correct answer.
2. Ask your child to give the opposite of the words using the prefix "un-".

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم عن البادئة "-un".
- اطلب من طفلك أن يختار الإجابة الصحيحة.
- اطلب من طفلك أن يعطى عكس الكلمات مستخدماً البادئة "-un".

General Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Can Nader come to .... games with us?
   a. run b. read c. play d. walk
2. We live in a/an .... on the second floor.
   a. park b. apartment c. library d. shop
3. Spending too much time playing computer games is ....
   a. unhealthy b. useful c. healthy d. good
4. What's the .... ? - I've a problem.
   a. date b. matter c. address d. name

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad. Hadeer asked, 'What's the matter, my friend?' Rania answered, 'It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go **outside**. I don't know what to do.' Hadeer said, 'Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The problem in the text is about " .... ".
   a. Eating fast food b. Playing computer games
   c. Sleeping late d. Asking questions
2. The underlined word " **outside**" is the opposite of ....
   a. under b. inside c. above d. next to

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Where did the two neighbors meet?

....

4. What healthy things should children do?

....

3 Punctuate the following.

we can play together and have fun

....

4 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Cons of computer games

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements: • do homework • go outside

Lessons **4 & 5**

- Writing
- Project



I Vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات	reason	سبب
cons	سلبيات	screen	شاشة
solve problems	يحل مشكلات	team	فريق
spend	يقضي	prize	جائزة

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- In my opinion, في رأيي،
- At the end في النهاية
- On the other hand, على الجانب الآخر،
- find out يكتشف

Pros and cons of computer games
إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر



- ☑ In some games, children need to solve problems.
- ☑ Children make friends and play with their family.
- ☑ Children find a prize at the end.





- ☒ Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets.
- ☒ Children don't go outside.
- ☒ Children don't do their homework.

II Reading



Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Pros and cons of computer games

Paragraph 1

[Bad things about computer games]



Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

الفقرة الأولى : [أشياء سيئة عن ألعاب الكمبيوتر]
يقول الكثير من الناس أن ألعاب الكمبيوتر ضارة للأطفال. يمكن للأطفال قضاء ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة اللوحية الخاصة بهم. إنهم ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يخرجون أو يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية. يقول الآباء أن هذا ليس صحيًا لأطفالهم.

Paragraph 2

[Good things about computer games]



But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

الفقرة الثانية : [أشياء جيدة عن ألعاب الكمبيوتر]
ولكن من ناحية أخرى، هناك بعض الأسباب التى تجعل ألعاب الكمبيوتر مفيدة للأطفال. فى بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات. تحتاج بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر إلى فرق، لذلك يكون الأطفال صداقات ويلعبون مع عائلتهم.

Paragraph 3

[My opinion]

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

الفقرة الثالثة : [رأيى]
أنا أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر التى أذهب فيها للخارج. أذهب مع عمى وأصدقائى. نحن نحب هذه الألعاب لأنك تجد جائزة فى النهاية. فى رأيى، يمكننا الاستمتاع بالألعاب، لكن نحتاج إلى أشياء أخرى فى حياتنا مثل الرياضة والوقت مع عائلتنا.

III Writing

 **Look, listen and read.** انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The headings refer to the contents of the paragraph.
العناوين تشير إلى محتويات الفقرة الإنشائية.

1 Research بحث
Find out about bullying online. Look for help online.
١. تعرف على التنمر عبر الأنترنت. أبحث عن المساعدة عبر الأنترنت.



2 What to do ماذا تفعل
Tell people about bullying online.
Give advice about bullying.
٢. أخبر الأشخاص عن التنمر عبر الأنترنت. قدم نصائح عن التنمر.

3 What to do more ماذا تفعل أكثر
Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school. Talk to teachers and parents.
٣. صمم ملصقات أو منشورات وضعها فى أنحاء المدرسة. تحدث إلى المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.

Note :
- To give an opinion لإبداء الرأى → "In my opinion, ..."
- To show contrast لتوضيح التناقض → "On the other hand, ..."

General Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Computer games are a .... way to spend time.
   a. healthy   b. fun   c. boring   d. helpful
2. Children can spend many .... playing games.
   a. weeks   b. months   c. hours   d. days
3. You shouldn't .... all your time playing computer games.
   a. watch   b. help   c. wash   d. spend
4. You should go outside and read ....
   a. books   b. notes   c. games   d. information

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's .... to spend many hours on your computer and tablet.
   a. nice   b. good   c. bad   d. great
2. In some games, children need to .... problems.
   a. solve   b. contact   c. plan   d. visit
3. It's not healthy to look at the .... of the computer for long hours.
   a. tablet   b. keyboard   c. mouse   d. screen
4. Social media has pros and ....
   a. reasons   b. prizes   c. presents   d. cons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teams - correct - children - solve - games

Some people think that computer games are useful. There're some reasons why computer (1) .... are good for children. In some games, children need to (2) .... problems. Some computer games need (3) ...., so children make friends and play with each other. Computer games also help (4) .... think well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and

they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

But, on the other hand, computer games can be useful. For children, playing some computer games helps them to think well. Games can help children to play in a team. Children can make new friends. They can learn to follow some rules. Children can get prizes at the end of the game, so they have fun.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The word "......................." in the text means father and mother.

a. problems b. parents c. reasons d. tablets

2. Computer games are sometimes ....

a. cold b. hot c. good d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. How can children make friends in computer games?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

children should do their homework and go outside

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN[18] words using the following guiding elements.

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The pros of computer games"

Guiding elements :

- solve
- friends

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Demonstrate understanding of specific details



تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى فهم تفاصيل محددة فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا وتكون الإجابة موجودة فى النص بشكل مباشر.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read the text and learn how to answer :

I'm doing research about chameleons. I logged into the library website. I created a password to get information. Chameleons change color. They're the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes.

شرح الحل اقرأ المعلومات الواردة جيدًا واستخرج المعلومات مباشرة من النص.

1. The research is about ....

a. lizards b. chameleons c. birds d. lions

2. To get information, we log into the .... website.

a. library b. restaurant c. park d. club

3. Chameleons can change ....

a. fur b. legs c. eyes d. color

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read the text and answer the questions :

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

1. Computer games are .... for children.

a. great b. bad c. good d. friendly

2. They look at the screen and don't go ....

a. inside b. outside c. beside d. upside

3. .... say computer games are unhealthy for children.

a. Family b. Uncle c. Grandparents d. Parents

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [مميزات وعيوب العاب الكمبيوتر] و [ابق امنًا عبر الانترنت] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 — Review your vocabulary

Pros and cons of computer games

▶ Write the meaning :

- العاب ....
- ساعات ....
- الخارج ....
- يقضى ....
- عائلات ....
- مشكلات ....

Stay safe online

- شخصى ....
- كلمة مرور ....
- سر ....
- يقبل ....
- معلومات ....
- يتنمر ....

Step 2 — Sentences

Pros and cons of computer games

▶ Complete the sentences :

1. Sometimes, computer .... are bad for children.
2. Children .... hours on their computers.
3. They don't go ....
4. Sometimes, children need to solve .... in some games.

Stay safe online

1. We should use a strong ....
2. You should .... to be friends with people you know.
3. Don't.................... anyone when you use the internet.
4. You should keep your information ....

Step 3 — Topics

▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Pros and cons of computer games"

....
....
....
....
....
....

▶ Write a paragraph using the sentences :

"Stay safe online"

....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة [١٨ جملة].

1 Doing research

I'm doing research about chameleons[1]. I logged into the library website[2]. I created a password to get information[3]. Chameleons change color[4]. They're the same color as the place where they are[5]. They have amazing eyes[6].

2 Stay safe online

You should use a strong password[7]. You shouldn't accept to be friends with people you don't know[8]. You should only give your phone number to your friends[9]. You should keep your personal information secret[10]. You should tell your parents when someone bullies you online[11]. You shouldn't tell everyone your birthday and your phone number[12].

3 Pros and cons of computer games

Many people say that computer games are bad for children[13]. They can spend many hours on their computers[14]. They don't go outside[15]. On the other hand in some games, children need to solve problems[16]. Children make friends and play with their families[17]. I really like computer games[18].



TEST YOUR SKILLS



I enjoy my life



If you got 🔴 you need to revise the unit again on the next page.

قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على 🔴 غير جيد قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى في الصفحة التالية.

My Speaking

1 Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box.

buy - amazing - change - homework

Laila : Hi, Sara ! What are you doing ?

Sara : I'm doing my (1) .... about chameleons.

Laila : What did you know about chameleons ?

Sara : They (2) .... color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

Laila : What else ?

Sara : They have (3) .... eyes and they can see all around.

My Language

2 Read and choose the correct answer.

1. You .... keep your password secret.

a. should b. shouldn't

2. We shouldn't .... our photos on social media.

a. shares b. share

3. You .... be a bully.

a. should b. shouldn't

My Writing

3 Write a paragraph of (18-24) words about doing research.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

My Project

4 Make a leaflet about how to stay safe online.

....

....

....

....

....

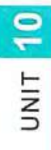
....

....

....



قم بتلوين الدائرة باللون المناسب لمستواك.



Review on Unit 10

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة العاشرة فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

chameleon	حرباء	cell phone	هاتف خلوى
message	رسالة	website	موقع إلكترونى
chat	محادثة	secret	سر / سرى
password	كلمة سر	outside	خارج
social media	وسائل التواصل الإجتماعى	tag	شعار / اشعار
device	جهاز	solve	يحل
tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى	bullying	تنمر
log in	يسجل دخول	information	معلومات
research	بحث	problem	مشكلة
problem	مشكلة	fun	متعة

Language

1. Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

Subject الفاعل + **should / shouldn't** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

- You should turn your phone off at night.
- You shouldn't give your password to anyone who asks.

2. un- = not

un– is a prefix means not. هى بادئة تعنى "غير". un–

We add "un–" at the beginning of a word to get the opposite meaning.

نضع البادئة " un– " فى بداية الكلمة لإعطاء عكس المعنى.

healthy → unhealthy

happy → unhappy

Test 7 on Unit 10

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. To stay safe online, you should have a very .... password.
   a. weak b. strong c. bad d. short
2. You should speak to people you .... online.
   a. know b. save c. hurt d. help
3. You shouldn't speak to .... on the internet.
   a. friends b. teachers c. strangers d. family
4. You shouldn't be an online ....
   a. user b. friend c. player d. bully

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You should .... safe online.
   a. stay b. use c. save d. accept
2. .... have amazing eyes and they can change color.
   a. Lions b. Chameleons c. Dogs d. Pandas
3. I logged into different .... to finish my research.
   a. games b. classes c. websites d. parks
4. Don't forget to .... me in your post, so I can see it.
   a. tag b. copy c. plan d. bully

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

secret - accept - play - password - media

There are some rules we should follow when we use social media. When you use social (1) ...., you should be careful. You should (2) .... to be friends only with people you know. You should keep your password (3) .... .You shouldn't give your (4) .... to anyone who asks.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Amany is doing her homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! She logged into the library website and created a password to get information. Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. Amany looked at many websites and did research. She found new ideas and wrote them in her own words.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Amany's research is about ....
   a. lions   b. tigers   c. chameleons   d. lizards
2. The .... is a website on the internet where you can get information for your research.
   a. newspaper   b. library website
   c. notebook   d. sports center

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did Amany do to get information online ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You should .... [going] to bed early.
2. Chocolate is .... [healthy], but fruit is healthy.
3. They .... [shouldn't] be respectful.
4. You shouldn't .... [tells] me your password.

6 Punctuate the following.

don't copy information

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Social media

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- have fun
- find information

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 8 on Unit 10

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last ...., I had some homework.
   a. day b. month c. week d. year
2. The homework was about ....
   a. chameleons b. lions c. pandas d. elephants
3. I created a password to log into a .... website.
   a. school b. library c. laboratory d. classroom
4. Our teacher loved our ....
   a. invitation b. communication c. presentation d. transportation

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I logged into the library website and created a .... to get information. [الاسكندرية - العجمى ٢٠٢٣]
   a. story b. password c. tablet d. phone
2. .... and cell phones are modern devices, they can help us go online. [أسوان - أدفو ٢٠٢٣]
   a. Televisions b. Tablets c. Fans d. Rockets
3. Sara is a .... girl. She always has amazing ideas and thoughts. [الأقصر - الطود ٢٠٢٣]
   a. lazy b. sad c. creative d. stupid
4. Some computer games need ...., so children can make friends. [البحيرة - كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣]
   a. apartments b. screens c. teams d. animals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box. [السويس ٢٠٢٣]

research - devices – homework – world - have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the (1) .... People can use computers and other (2) .... to share their thoughts and ideas. Children can use social media to (3) .... fun. Scientists can use social media to do (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people think that social media is bad for us because we spend too much time on it. They also believe that we are not safe online. On the other hand, some people think that it's great and fun. Social media is a good thing,

but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it. In my opinion, watching too much TV can be **useful** to learn what is going on in the world, but we should not let it waste our precious time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is mainly about ....

a. air pollution b. school subjects c. social media d. festivals

2. The underlined word "**useful**" means "........................ ".

a. bad b. harmful c. good d. weak

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give one reason why social media is bad for us.

....

4. Why do people think watching TV is a bad idea ?

....

(البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You .... (shouldn't) help your brother.

2. You shouldn't .... (playing) at the library.

3. Eating too much chocolate is .... (healthy).

4. You should .... (creates) a password to log into the website.

6 Punctuate the following.

chameleons have amazing eyes (بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الانجليزية ٢٠٢٣)

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Computer games مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- spend
- children

(سوهاج - المنشأة ٢٠٢٣)

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

▶ Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Social media is when we use computers to .... thoughts.
   [share – hide – cover]
2. Social media helps us talk to our .... and family.
   [teachers – friends – birds]
3. Many .... can find information for their homework by social media.
   [players – robots – students]

▶ Read and complete the dialogue.

research – chameleons – doing – about

Ali : What are you (1) .... ?
Hazem : I'm doing (2) .... online.
Ali : What is it (3) .... ?
Hazem : It's about (4) ....

▶ Choose the correct answer.

1. We .... give our phone number to everyone.
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. can
2. I logged into the library .... to do my research.
   a. website b. phone c. number d. bag
3. You shouldn't .... new friends online.
   a. making b. makes c. make d. made
4. Don't .... information. Find ideas and write your own words.
   a. plan b. create c. copy d. cook
5. Social media has .... and cons.
   a. pros b. bad c. seasons d. roots

▶ Reorder.

1. eyes - Chameleons - amazing - have.
....
2. a - Don't - be - bully.
....
3. playing - They - games - love - computer.
....
4. respectful - Remember - be - to.
....
5. my – making – with - I'm - a presentation – friend.
....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt is a special ....
   a. village b. city c. town d. country
2. Near the ...., it is green and beautiful.
   a. Nile b. lake c. oasis d. desert
3. Our food can be described with one word : ....
   a. painful b. helpful c. wonderful d. useful
4. Our .... are famous.
   a. movies b. songs c. books d. prizes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I sent a .... to my friend, but she didn't read it.
   a. glass b. message c. watch d. present
2. I got a lot of .... for my birthday.
   a. colors b. presents c. homework d. jobs
3. She .... into the library website to get information.
   a. logged b. walked c. enjoyed d. knew
4. "......................" means having something different or that nobody else has.
   a. Special b. Region c. Hospitable d. Messy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

live – famous – eyes – place – ears

Chameleons are amazing. They are (1) .... for being able to change the color of their skin. They are the same color as the (2) .... where they are. They have amazing (3) .... and they can see all around. Most chameleons (4) .... in trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Egyptian people are helpful to each other. We are friendly to visitors. We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous around the world. We have authors who won important prizes. We have green lands near the Nile. We should be proud of our beautiful country.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Egyptian culture is ....

   a. rich   b. poor   c. strong   d. tired

2. A/An .... is a person who writes stories and movies.

   a. doctor   b. engineer   c. author   d. visitor

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How are Egyptian people ?

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I have some .... [beauty] flowers.
2. What .... [do] you find yesterday ?
3. The mouse ate a piece .... [off] cheese.
4. They .... [are] at the cinema last Friday.

6 Punctuate the following.

which game only needs people

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements

Musical chairs game

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

What do we need to play ?	We need chairs and some music.
Who is out ?	When the music stops, the player without a chair is out.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 11 What can we do ?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل ؟

Aims of Unit eleven : الأهداف العامة للوحدة الحادية عشر :

In this unit I will ... في هذه الوحدة سوف...

- listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
  - استمع، اقرأ، أبحث وأكتب عن وسائل المواصلات.
- practice making sentences with need and must.
  - أتدرب على تكوين الجمل مع [need] و [must].
- learn about different transportation.
  - أتعلم عن وسائل المواصلات المختلفة.
- read and listen to a short story.
  - اقرأ وأستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
- learn about and say words that begin with tr and cr, and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.
  - أتعلم عن وأقول كلمات تبدأ بـ [tr] و [cr] وإدغام الحروف [ai] و [oa] و [ea].
- write about how to stop air pollution.
  - أكتب عن كيفية إيقاف تلوث الهواء.
- research and make a leaflet about road safety.
  - أبحث وأصنع نشرة عن سلامة الطريق.

Lesson 1

▸ Transportation



▸ Language Focus





I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary



bus أتوبيس / حافلة



train قطار



ship سفينة



rail سكة حديدية



metro مترو الأنفاق



boat قارب



plane طائرة



car سيارة

Extra vocabulary

road	طريق	vehicle	مَركَبة/عربة
train station	محطة قطار	public transportation	وسائل المواصلات العامة
under	تحت / أسفل		
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	air	هواء
far	بعيد	monorail	خط سكة حديدية أحادى
taxi	سيارة أجرة / تاكسى	airport	مطار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
travel	يسافر / ينتقل	traveled
move	يتحرك	moved

Irregular

Present		Past
come	يأتى	came
catch	يلحق	caught

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- on the water عبر المياه
- move on يتحرك على
- land transportation وسائل المواصلات البرية
- on the road على الطريق
- go through the air يتنقل / يتحرك جواً

• The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 passenger carriages.

- يعد قطار الغان فى أستراليا أطول قطار ركاب فى العالم. يبلغ طوله حوالى ٧٧٤ متراً. يمكن أن يصل إلى ٤٤ عربة ركاب.

II Listening and Reading

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.
أهلًا ماجد! أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار في الفصل حول وسائل النقل العام.

Cool! رائع!

How do you get to school ? كيف تصل إلى المدرسة ؟

I come to school on foot. آتي إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

Do you ever catch the bus or metro ? هل سبق لك ركوب الأتوبيس أو المترو ؟

Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.
فقط إذا تأخرت. أحب أن آتي سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أتمكن من مقابلة أصدقائي.

Thanks ! Ramy, how do you get to school ? شكرًا ! كيف تصل إلى المدرسة يا رامي ؟

I come by car with my dad. آتي بالسيارة مع والدي.

Do you ever catch the bus or metro ? هل سبق لك أن ركبت الأتوبيس أو المترو ؟

Yes, if my dad is not in town. I take the bus. I like it.
نعم، إذا لم يكن والدي في المدينة. فأنا أستقل الحافلة. أحبها.

Why ? لماذا ؟

We travel slowly and I can see the city. ننتقل ببطء وأستطيع أن أرى المدينة.

Do you ever come to school on foot ?
هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام ؟

No, my house is very far from the school. لا، بيتي بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.

Thanks! Have a nice day ! شكرًا ! طاب يومك !

You too ! أنت أيضًا !

⭐ Read and learn. اقرأ وتعلم.

- Land transportation ▶ bus – car – train – taxi –metro
- Air transportation ▶ plane
- Water transportation ▶ boat – ship

- When I travel by plane ✈, I go through the air. - عندما اسافر بالطائرة، فأنا اسافر عبر الهواء.
- When I travel by ship and boat, I am on the water.
- عندما انتقل بالسفينة والقارب ، فأنا أكون على الماء.
- When I travel by bus and car, I am on the road.
- عندما انتقل بالأتوبيس والسيارة ، فأنا اكون على الطريق.
- When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by train, I move on a rail under the vehicle.
- عندما أسافر الى الأقصر من القاهرة بالقطار ، فأنا أتحرك على القضبان الحديدية اسفل المركبة.

III Language Focus

1 Talking about your favorite transportation.
التحدث عن وسائل المواصلات المفضلة لديك.





My favorite transportation is a ship. I love traveling on water.
وسيلة المواصلات المفضلة لدى هى السفينة. أنا أحب السفر عبر المياه.

2 Prepositions of transportation. حروف الجر الخاصة بوسائل المواصلات.

A by + means of transport

يستخدم حرف الجر (by) قبل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل.





- We travel by taxi around the city.
- نتنقل بسيارة أجرة حول المدينة.

- I love traveling by plane.
- أحب السفر بالطائرة.

B on / in + means of transport

يستخدم حرف الجر "by" قبل كل وسائل المواصلات بشرط عدم وجود آداة أو أى كلمة أخرى قبلها مثل "a – an – the – my" وإن وجدت كلمة أخرى يتغير حرف الجر إلى "on – in"

- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "in" قبل وسائل المواصلات الخاصة مثل "car - taxi".
- لاحظ أنه يستخدم حرف الجر "on" دائمًا قبل كلمة "foot" لتعنى سيرًا على الأقدام وتأتى قبل وسائل المواصلات العامة مثل "bus - plane - train".

I go to school on foot.

- أذهب إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.



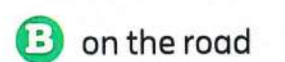
I love traveling on the train.

أحب السفر بالقطار.



3 Where means of transportation move. أين تتحرك وسائل المواصلات.







A on the water

B on the road

C on the rail (under the vehicle)













Pop Quiz on Language

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Which .... (are) your favorite transportation ?
2. I go to school .... (on) bus.
3. They go to the park .... (in) car.
4. We travel to Aswan .... (at) plane.
5. Trains move .... (in) the rail.
6. He goes to the library .... (in) foot.
7. We travel to Alexandria .... (on) train.
8. My favorite transportation .... (are) a car.
9. I love traveling .... (by) water.
10. Cars and buses move .... (in) the road.

General Exercises on Lesson 1



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adam is .... years old.
   a. seven b. six c. nine d. ten
2. Adam's favorite transportation is a ....
   a. car b. bus c. plane d. taxi
3. When Adam travels by car, he is on the ....
   a. water b. sea c. road d. lake
4. Adam travels by .... on holidays.
   a. ship b. train c. plane d. boat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Which is your favorite .... ? - A train.
   a. game b. transportation c. subject d. book
2. Boats and ships are .... transportation.
   a. air b. water c. land d. sky
3. When I travel by bus, I am on the ....
   a. road b. rail c. water d. air
4. Trains move on a/an ....
   a. road b. water c. rail d. air

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

rail – plane – road – favorite – traveled

Yesterday, my family and I went to Alexandria to visit our grandparents. We (1) .... by train. We caught a train from a train station. The train moved on a (2) .... under the vehicle. My (3) .... transportation is a train. It's clean and fast. My sister likes going through the air more. She likes traveling by (4) .... My mother's favorite transportation is the bus.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We go to the airport to travel .... (in) plane.
2. He goes to work .... (by) a bus.
3. They go to the school .... (in) foot.
4. Dad goes to the airport .... (by) a taxi.

Lesson 2

- Road Safety
- Language focus
- Be careful on the roads!

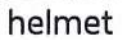




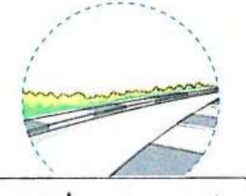
I Vocabulary

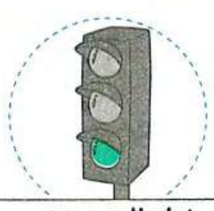
Key vocabulary











helmet	خوذة	seat belt	حزام أمان
road	طريق	green light	أشارة المرور الخضراء

ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	crosswalk	معبر / ممر مشاة
motorbike	دراجة نارية	shocked	مصدوم

Extra vocabulary

right	يمين	necessary	ضرورى
left	يسار	safely	بسلامة
sign	لافتة / علامة	safety	السلامة / الأمان
danger	خطر	safe	آمن
go straight	يسير فى خط مستقيم	ride a bike	يركب دراجة
young	شاب (صغير السن)	scared	خائف
hospital	مستشفى	fast	سريع
kind	طيب/عطوف	leg	ساق
man	رجل	wrong	خطأ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
turn	يحول	turned
wait for	ينتظر لاجل	waited for
cross	يعبر	crossed
park	يركن (سيارة)	parked

Irregular

Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove
fall over	يسقط	fell over
hurt	يجرح/يؤذى	hurt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• by motorbike	بواسطة دراجة نارية	• in a hurry	فى عجلة من أمره / مُسرعًا
• drive through	يقود خلال	• Be careful !	كن حريصًا / حذرًا !
• at the crosswalk	على ممر المشاة	• the middle of	منتصف

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Be careful on the roads.	love - school	Mazen and Dalida love their school.
	works - city	Hani works in the city.
	motorbike	Hani goes to work by motorbike.
	middle - crosswalk	Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk.
	fell over - leg	Mazen fell over and hurt his leg.



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

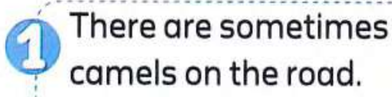
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Can you .... a bike ?
   a. ask b. sail c. ride d. cross
2. I wear the .... on my head when I ride my bike.
   a. helmet b. watch c. clothes d. toy
3. My dad has a .... in his car to drive safely.
   a. station b. helmet c. seat belt d. bike

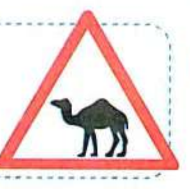
Look, read and identify. انظر، اقرأ و تعرف.

Road signs لافتات الطريق





1. There are sometimes camels on the road.
هناك أحيانًا جمال على الطريق.



2. You can't swim here.
لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.





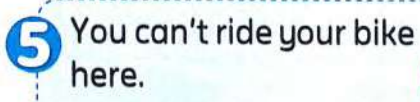
3. You can go straight and turn right.
يمكنك السير فى خط مستقيم وتتجه يمينًا.





4. Stop here and wait for a green light.
توقف هنا وانتظر إشارة المرور الخضراء.

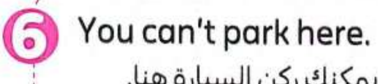




5 You can't ride your bike here.

لا يمكنك ركوب الدراجة هنا.





6 You can't park here.

لا يمكنك ركن السيارة هنا.

 **Look, read and circle.** انظر، اقرأ وضع دائرة.

Road safety السلامة على الطريق

1 You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى [ارتداء] خوذة عند ركوب دراجتك.

a.  b. 

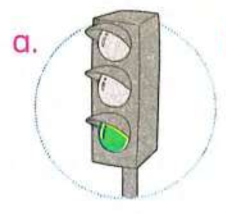
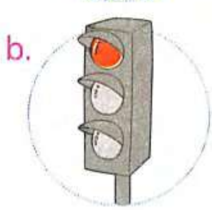
2 You need a seat belt in your car.

أنت بحاجة إلى [ارتداء] حزام الأمان فى سيارتك.

a.  b. 

3 You need a green light to cross the road.

أنت بحاجة إلى ضوء أخضر فى إشارة المرور لعبور الطريق.

a.  b. 

4 You need to look left and right.

أنت بحاجة للنظر إلى اليسار واليمين.

a.  b. 

II Language Focus

need / need to يحتاج / يحتاج إلى

Usage : We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

نستخدم «need» عندما يكون شيء ما هام أو ضرورى.

We use "need to" and "the infinitive" when something is important to do.

نستخدم « المصدر + need to» عندما يكون من الضرورى القيام بشيء ما.

Formation : التكوين

Subj. + need + noun .... | Subj. + need to + inf. ....

We need safe roads.
نحن نحتاج طرق آمنة.





You need to look left and right.
أنت بحاجة إلى النظر يسارًا ويمينًا.







III Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ٧ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

 **Listen and read.** استمع واقرأ.

Be careful on the roads !



The beginning

Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind.

Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry.

The middle

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

The end

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance. Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

The moral of the story : We learn to be careful on the road.

الدرس المستفاد من القصة : أن نتعلم كيف نكون حذرين على الطريق.

Summarize the key ideas.
لخص الأفكار الأساسية.

Learn 1. Summarize the middle of the story.
- Mazen had an accident.

Practice 2. Summarize the end of the story.

....

مازن وداليدا هما أخ وأخت. إنهم يحبون مدرستهم. معلميهم لطفاء جدًا. هانى شاب. يعمل في المدينة ويذهب للعمل بواسطة دراجة نارية. اليوم، كان فى عجلة من أمره. مازن وداليدا يمشيان معًا إلى المدرسة. إنهم يعبرون الطريق عند معبر المشاة. اليوم، ساروا إلى ممر المشاة وانتظروا توقف السيارات. ثم ساروا فى الطريق. سار مازن إلى منتصف ممر المشاة. ثم قاد هانى خلال معبر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يسير بسرعة كبيرة. سقط مازن. وأصيب بصدمة شديدة. كانت داليدا خائفة، لكنها أرادت مساعدة شقيقها. توقف هانى للمساعدة. أراد مازن الذهاب إلى المدرسة، لكنه أصيب فى ساقه. طلب هانى سيارة إسعاف. مازن الآن فى المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. هانى يشعر انه ليس على ما يرام.

General Exercises on Lesson 2

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's important to be .... on the roads.
   a. worried b. safe c. nervous d. angry
2. We need a seat belt in our ....
   a. homes b. apartments c. cars d. schools
3. We also need to cross the road when the light is ....
   a. yellow b. green c. red d. black
4. We need to look left and and right before we .... the road.
   a. cross b. sell c. describe d. build

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You need a green light to .... the road.
   a. cut b. build c. cross d. drive
2. You can go .... then turn left.
   a. street b. straight c. strange d. store
3. Cross the road at the ....
   a. car b. trucks c. crosswalk d. station
4. You must .... the road signs.
   a. follow b. cut c. leave d. eat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

seat - safe – left – light – red

When you ride your bike, you need a helmet . You also need a (1).......................... belt in your car. You need a green (2).......................... to cross the road. When you cross the road, you need to look (3)..........................and right. We should be (4).......................... on roads.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road. Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk. Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother. Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg. Hani called for an ambulance. Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word .... in the text means a vehicle that carries sick people.
   a. car b. taxi c. ambulance d. train

2. The moral of the text is to ....

a. be in a hurry
b. be healthy
c. be careful on roads
d. be lazy

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How did Dalida feel when Mazen fell down ?

....

4. How did the ambulance help Mazen ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You need .... (at) sleep early.
2. She needs to .... (eats) healthy food.
3. We .... (need to) safe roads.
4. I need to .... (wearing) a jacket.

6 Punctuate the following.

we need safe roads

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Road safety"

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- How can you be safe on roads ?
- What should we wear on our bikes ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Lesson 3

- Air pollution
- Language Focus
- Pronunciation



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
sick	مريض	dirty	متسخ / ملوث
solar power	طاقة شمسية	electric buses	حافلات كهربائية

Extra vocabulary

rice straw	قش الأرز	town	مدينة [صغيرة]
Copenhagen	كوبنهاغن [عاصمة الدنمارك]	Paris	باريس [عاصمة فرنسا]
Denmark	دولة الدنمارك	France	دولة فرنسا
London	مدينة لندن	England	دولة انجلترا
China	دولة الصين	Shenzhen	مدينة شنجن [فى الصين]
mask	قناع وجه	near	قريب
cough	سعال / كحة / يكح	polluted	ملوث
burn	يحترق - يحرق		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular

Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
cover	يغطى	covered
share	يشارك	shared
allow	يسمح	allowed

Irregular

Present		Past
buy	يشترى	bought
wear	يرتدى	wore

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

• go into	يدخل	• parts of	أجزاء من
• good ideas	أفكار جيدة	• wear a mask	يرتدى قناع

Main points on listening and reading texts نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع و القراءة

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
Air pollution	air pollution	Cars make air pollution.
	chemicals	Cars put chemicals into the air.
	dangerous	The chemicals are dangerous for us.
	polluted - sick	Polluted air makes us feel sick.
	see- air	We can't see chemicals in air.
	cycle - electric	Walk or cycle to school and use electric buses.
	burning - straw	Stop burning rice straw to stop pollution.

II Listening and Reading

Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

Why is air pollution dangerous ? لماذا تلوث الهواء خطير؟

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.
Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.
Does this happen to you in your city or town ? Is the air dirty or clean ?





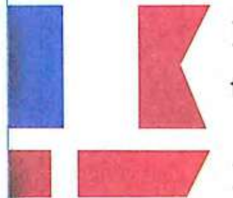
Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution.
In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.



In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.



In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.



In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city. In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.



In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.

These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities. Which idea do you like best ?



Look, listen and read. انظر، استمع واقرأ.

The experts' ideas to stop air pollution

أفكار الخبراء للحد من تلوث الهواء.

1.



Share a car with another person.

شارك السيارة مع شخص آخر.

2.



Use solar power.

استخدم الطاقة الشمسية.

3.



Go to school by bike.

اذهب إلى المدرسة بالدراجة.

4.



Plant trees.

ازرع أشجار.

5.



Buy food at shops near your house.

اشترى طعام من المحلات القريبة من منزلك.

المدن بها سيارات كثيرة. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. تبعث المواد الكيميائية فى الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة. يشكل تلوث الهواء خطورة كبيرة علينا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل هذا يحدث لك فى مدينتك أو بلدتك ؟ هل الهواء ملوث أم نظيف ؟
تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء. فى لندن، بانجلترا، الآباء لا يقودون السيارة بأطفالهم إلى المدرسة. يمشى الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة. فى شنجن بالصين، لديهم حافلات كهربائية. هذه الحافلات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء. فى الغربية، مصر، أراد الفلاحين الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.
فى باريس، بفرنسا، لا يمكن للسيارات الذهاب إلى بعض أجزاء المدينة. فى هذه الأماكن، يمكنك المشى أو ركوب الحافلة فقط. يوجد فى كوبنهاغن بالدنمارك، عدد الدراجات أكثر من عدد الأشخاص وأجزاء كبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بوجود السيارات. هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لوقف تلوث الهواء فى المدن. أى فكرة تفضلها أكثر ؟

III Language Focus

Taking notes تدوين ملاحظات

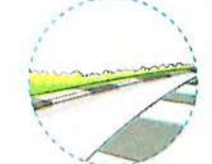
When we take notes, we don't write the complete sentences.
We write important words.

عندما نقوم بتدوين الملاحظات، لا نكتب جمل كاملة. نكتب الكلمات الهامة.

We use [must] and the infinitive for strong advice.

نستخدم "must" والمصدر لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Formation : التكوين Subj. + must/mustn't + inf.

Notes	Sentences
wear helmet on bike 	You must wear a helmet on the bike.
don't run-roads 	You mustn't run on the roads.



Pop Quiz on Language

★ **Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.**

1. You mustn't........................[parking] your car here.
2. You ....[mustn't] be quiet at the hospital.
3. They must........................[wears] a helmet on the bike.
4. She must........................[takes] the medicine.
5. We........................[must] eat at the library.
6. You ....[mustn't] raise your hand to speak at the classroom.
7. You mustn't........................[to copy] your friend's homework.
8. He must........................[to wash] his hands before eating.

IV Pronunciation



Listen and repeat. استمع وردد.

t + r = tr

The letters tr make the sound /tr/.



truck شاحنة



train قطار

c + r = cr

The letters cr make the sound /kr/.



crowd ازدحام



crash يصطدم بـ/ حادث تصادم



crosswalk ممر مشاة

a + i = ai

The letters ai make the sound /eI/.



train قطار



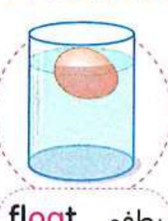
rain يمطر / مطر



snail حلزون

o + a = oa

The letters oa make the sound /OƱ/.

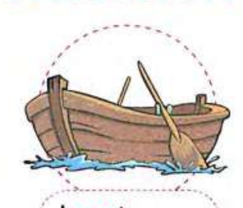


float يطفو

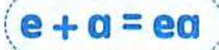




coat معطف



boat قارب



e + a = ea

The letters ea make the sound /i:/.



sea بحر



dream يحلم/حلم



clean ينظف/نظيف

• Help your child listen to the words that have /tr/ , /kr/, /eI/ , /oƱ/, /i:/ sounds and repeat them.

- ساعد طفلك أن يستمع إلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على أصوات /tr/ , /kr/ , /eI / , /OƱ/ , /i:/ ويرددهم.



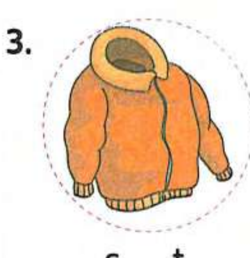
Pop Quiz on Pronunciation

1 Look and write the missing sound.

1. _ _ uck

2. 

sn _ _ l

3. 

c _ _ t

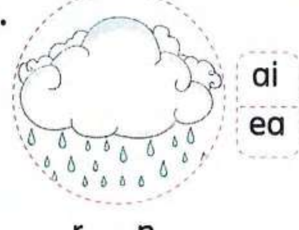
4. 

_ _ ash

2 Read and circle the odd sound out.

1. dream	sea	float	clean
2. crowd	crash	crosswalk	train
3. rain	coat	boat	float

3 Look, circle and write.

1. 

ai / ea

r _ _ n

2. 

tr / cr

_ _ owd

3. 

ai / ea

cl _ _ n

4 Read and sort.

dream – crash – snail – sea – crosswalk – truck – rain – train

cr	tr	ai	ea
....	....	....	....
....	....	....	....

General Exercises on Lesson 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. In Gharbia, farmers wanted to have cleaner ....
   a. water b. air c. food d. crops
2. They stopped .... rice straw.
   a. burning b. cutting c. eating d. collecting
3. They used the .... to make food for their animals.
   a. water b. wood c. straw d. plastic
4. They also used it to .... their crops.
   a. eat b. collect c. cut d. cover

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My brother is sick, he has a ....
   a. toy b. pen c. cough d. present
2. We can get .... power from the sun.
   a. wind b. water c. sand d. solar
3. Electric buses can stop air ....
   a. gases b. pollution c. steam d. power
4. I can't .... well because of air pollution.
   a. share b. breathe c. buy d. burn

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Cars - drive - cycle - school - pollution

Air pollution is a very dangerous problem. Some cities are trying to stop air (1)........................ In London, England, parents do not (2)........................ children to school. The children walk or (3)........................ to school. (4)........................ do not go near the school.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a. clean air b. snow c. air pollution d. stars
2. In England, children go to school by ....
   a. bikes b. cars c. planes d. trains

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. How does China try to stop air pollution ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You .... [must] run on the roads.
2. I must .... [wearing] my uniform at school.
3. We must .... [buys] tickets to watch the movie.
4. You .... [mustn't] hurry to catch the school bus.

6 Punctuate the following.

chemicals in the air are dangerous

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Air pollution

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- chemicals
- dangerous

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 4&5

- Writing
- Road safety leaflet



I Vocabulary

Key vocabulary

energy-saving lightbulbs	مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة	apartment	شقة سكنية
		excited	متحمس
main heading	عنوان رئيسى	photo	صورة فوتوغرافية
paragraph	فقرة إنشائية	sub-heading	عنوان فرعى
pollution	تلوث		

Extra vocabulary

cleaner	أكثر نظافة	balcony	شُرفة / بلكونة
public	عام	gas	غاز
car-sharing	مشاركة السيارة	signs	لافتات / اشارات
fresh air	هواء نقى	traffic	مرور / حركة المرور
factory	مصنع	leaflet	نشرة / منشور
breathing problems	مشاكل التنفس		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular			Irregular		
Present		Past	Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided	hear	يسمع	heard
increase	يزيد	increased	put in	يضع فى	put in

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

- on balcony في الشُرفة (البلكونة)
- car-free roads طرق خالية من السيارات

Main points on Listening and Reading texts

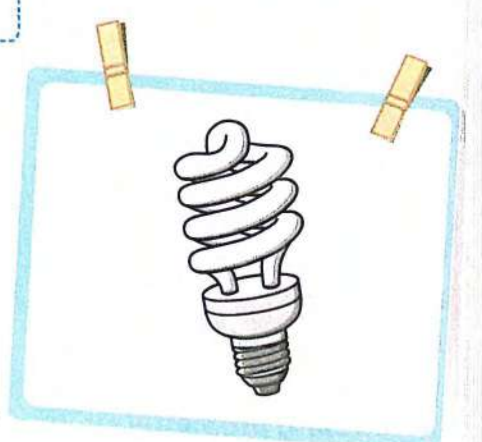
نقاط هامة على نصوص الاستماع والقراءة.

Topic	Guiding words	Sentences
How to stop pollution	stop - burning	We need to stop burning rice straw.
	bikes	We need to use lots of bikes.
	use	We need to use solar power.
	energy - saving	We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment.

II Reading and Writing

Read the following report about pollution. اقرأ التقرير الآتي عن التلوث.

Youssef's report



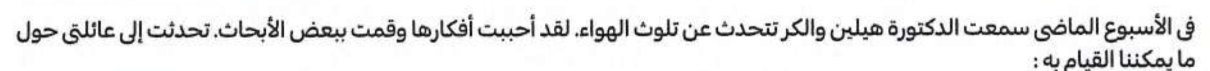
Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do :

- We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment.
- We can use buses and trains more.
- We can share a car with a friend sometimes.
- We can walk and not always go by car.
- We can have many plants on our balcony.

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to her school.

We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited !

Youssef



فى الأسبوع الماضى سمعت الدكتورة هيلين والكر تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أحببت أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث. تحدثت إلى عائلتى حول ما يمكننا القيام به :

- يمكننا أن يكون لدينا مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة فى شقتنا.
- يمكننا استخدام الحافلات والقطارات أكثر.
- يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق فى بعض الأحيان.
- يمكننا المشى ولا نذهب دائمًا بالسيارة.
- يمكننا أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات فى شرفتنا.

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبى الآن للعمل مع صديقه فى نفس السيارة. أمى تأخذ الحافلة إلى العمل. هى لا تقود. أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. أختى نورا تمشى إلى المدرسة. لدينا المزيد من النباتات فى غرفة المعيشة وعلى الشرفة. عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا وضع مصابيح كهربائية موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس ! يوسف.



Pop Quiz on Reading and Writing

 **Write a report of [18-24] words about what you can do in your city or village.**

....

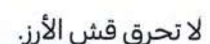
....

....

....

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Good ideas to stop air pollution أفكار جيدة للحد من تلوث الهواء



1. Don't burn rice straw.

   لا تحرق قش الأرز.



2. Have cleaner gas in cars.

   ضع غاز أكثر نظافة فى السيارات.



3. Increase public transportation.

   قم بزيادة استخدام وسائل النقل العام.





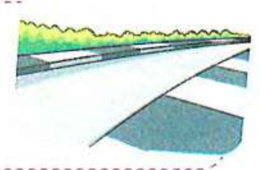
4. Travel on foot or by bike.

   تنقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.



5. Have some car-free roads.

   تخصيص بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.



Read and identify. اقرأ وتعرف.

Road safety	Air pollution
road signs	smoke
helmet	breathing problems
seat belts	factories
crosswalk	chemicals
fresh air	

Look, read and identify the leaflet. انظر، اقرأ وتعرف على المنشور.



General Exercises on Lessons 4& 5

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

work – stop – family – balcony - bike

Air pollution is very dangerous. I talked to my family about what we can do to (1) .... air pollution and save energy. We decided to change some things as a (2) .... Dad now goes to (3) .... with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by (4) ....

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

We can do a lot of things to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can use buses and trains more. We can share a car with a friend sometimes. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balcony. We also shouldn't burn rice straw. We should have cleaner gas in cars.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is " How to stop........................".

a. air pollution   b. unhealthy food   c. illnesses   d. cutting trees

2. We can have many .... on our balcony.

a. jobs   b. clothes   c. plants   d. foods

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Mention two things we can do to stop air pollution.

....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

3 Punctuate the following.

don't cross from behind a car

....

4 Write a paragraph of (18-24) words using the following guiding elements.

"How to stop air pollution"

Guiding elements :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

• share   • energy-saving lightbulbs

....

....

....

....

Skills 1 Reading Comprehension

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas or pieces of information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مدى اتقانك لمهارة القراءة.

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى وصف علاقة بين شخصين، حدثين ، فكرتين أو معلومتين فى النص.

مفتاح الحل يعتمد حل هذا السؤال على قراءة النص جيدًا أكثر من مرة للتمكن من فهم الترابط الموجود بين الأفكار والمعلومات فى النص.

Step 1 اقرأ وتعلم كيفية الإجابة.

Read and learn how to answer :

When we travel by plane, we go through air. The train moves on a rail. We ride the train from a train station. We travel on water by ship or boat. Cars and buses travel on roads. I like traveling by bus because we travel slowly and I can see the city.

شرح الحل تقرأ النص جيدًا وتفهم الترابط بين الأشخاص والأحداث والمعلومات الواردة

1. How can we travel on water ?
   - By boats and ships.
2. How can people who like to travel slowly move from place to place ?
   - By buses.
3. Why are the railways important for trains ?
   - Because trains move on a rail only.

Step 2 اقرأ وقم بالإجابة متبعًا الخطوة الأولى.

Read and answer the questions :

It's important to be safe on roads. You need a helmet on your bike to protect your head. You need a seat belt in your car. You need a green light to cross the road. You mustn't run on the roads. You must follow road signs.

1. Why is it important to wear a helmet on bikes ?

....

2. What do you need to wear in your car to be safe ?

....

3. What do you need to cross the road safely ?

....

2 Writing

يختبر سؤال مهارة الكتابة قدرتك على التعبير عن موضوع ما.

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (تلوث الهواء) و (الآمان فى الطريق) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك، معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية واستخدامها فى تكوين جمل تستخدمها للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Step 1 — Review your vocabulary

▶ **Write the meaning :**

Air pollution

- تلوث ....
- مصابيح كهربية ....
- قطارات ....
- نباتات ....
- يمشى ....
- يتشارك ....

Road safety

- خوذة ....
- حزام امان ....
- ضوء أخضر ....
- يمينًا ....
- يسارًا ....
- يجرى ....

Step 2 — Sentences

▶ **Complete the sentences :**

Air pollution

1. Air .... is very dangerous for our lives.
2. We can .... cars with our friends sometimes.
3. We can .... and not always go by car.
4. We can have energy - saving .... in our apartment.

Road safety

1. We shouldn't .... on roads.
2. You need .... to cross the road.
3. You need to look .... and right before you cross the road.
4. You need a .... in your car .

Step 3 — Topics

▶ **Write a paragraph using the sentences :**

Air pollution

....
....
....
....
....
....

▶ **Write a paragraph using the sentences :**

Road safety

....
....
....
....
....

3 Important topics

تعتبر مهارة الكتابة من المهارات الأساسية للتعبير عن فكرة أو موضوع لذا يجب استخدام جمل وأفكار مترابطة. قم بقراءة هذه الجمل لتساعدك على التعامل مع مهارة الكتابة (٢٤ جملة).

1 Transportation

When we travel by plane, we go through air[1]. The train moves on a rail[2]. The train is my favorite transportation[3]. We travel on water by ship or boat[4]. Cars and buses travel on roads[5]. I like traveling by bus because we travel slowly and I can see the city[6].

2 Road safety

It's important to be safe on the roads[7]. You need a helmet on your bike[8]. You need a seat belt in your car[9]. You need a green light to cross the road[10]. You mustn't run on the roads[11]. You must follow road signs[12].

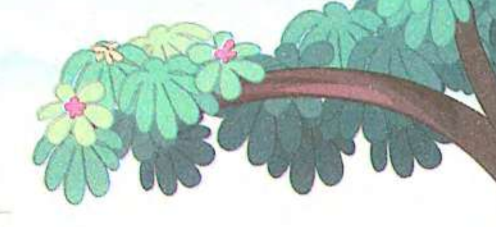
3 A road accident

My friend and I were walking to school[13]. We were crossing the road at the crosswalk[14]. A man on his motorbike was going too fast[15]. He hit my friend and fell down[16]. The man stopped and helped my friend[17]. He called for an ambulance and we went to the hospital[18].

4 Air pollution

Cities have many cars[19]. The cars make air pollution[20]. They put chemicals into the air[21]. Chemicals are dangerous[22]. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick[23]. We must try to stop pollution[24].





Review on Unit 11

مراجعة عامة على الوحدة الحادية عشر فى ورقة واحدة

Vocabulary

transportation	وسائل المواصلات
taxi	سيارة أجرة
bus	حافلة
helmet	خوذة
train	قطار
ship	سفينة
boat	قارب
shocked	مصدوم
rail	سكة حديدية
ambulance	سيارة أسعاف
pollution	تلوث
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
crosswalk	طريق عبور المشاة

Phonics

tr: truck, train

cr: crowd, crash

ai: rain, snail

oa: coat, float

ea: sea, clean

Language

need / need to

Subj. + need + noun ....

- We need safe roads.

Subj. + need to + inf. ....

- You need to look left and right.

must / mustn't

Subj. + must/mustn't + inf.

- You must wear a helmet on your bike.
- You mustn't run on the road.

Test 9 on Unit 11



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We decided to change some things to .... pollution.
   a. share b. stop c. cover d. drive
2. My father goes to work with his friend in the same ....
   a. bus b. car c. train d. plane
3. My .... takes the bus to work.
   a. brother b. uncle c. mother d. aunt
4. My sister .... to school.
   a. walks b. drives c. runs d. rides

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You need a .... on your bike.
   a. seat belt b. helmet c. bag d. pen
2. You need to .... the road at the crosswalk.
   a. visit b. cross c. cover d. drive
3. He hurts his leg. I'll call for a/an ....
   a. plane b. train c. helmet d. ambulance
4. We must stop air ....
   a. light b. pollution c. oxygen d. gases

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

straw - animals - stop - cleaner - crops

Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have (1) .... air. To do that, they stopped burning rice (2) .... They used the straw to make food for their (3) .... and cover their crops. This is a good idea to (4) .... air pollution.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do to stop air pollution.

We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. We can use buses and trains more. We can <u>**share**</u> a car with a friend sometimes. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balcony.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We can have energy-saving .... in our apartment.
   a. sun b. moon c. lightbulbs d. books
2. The underlined word "**share**" means to use something ....
   a. late b. lonely c. together d. well

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do we need to do on our balcony ?

....

4. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You must .... [cleans] your room.
2. She likes to go to school .... [by] foot.
3. I need .... [drink] a lot of water.
4. You mustn't .... [touching] the hot cup.

6 Punctuate the following.

don't burn rice straw

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Transportation

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- airport
- rail

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 10 on Unit 11

Collected From Governorates Exams
تدريبات مجمعة من مختلف المحافظات

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

تم تعديل أسئلة الاختبار طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I live in Cairo with my ....
   a. uncles b. friends c. parents d. cousins
2. I take the .... to school.
   a. taxi b. bus c. train d. car
3. I go to the .... with my mother on foot.
   a. market b. hospital c. bank d. park
4. When we want to visit my grandma in Alexandria, we travel by ....
   a. boat b. ship c. plane d. train

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You need to wear a .... in your car. [كفر الشيخ - بيلا ٢٠٢٣]
   a. skirt b. helmet c. seat belt d. tie
2. Planes, cars and buses are different kinds of .... [أسيوط - صدفة ٢٠٢٣]
   a. vehicles b. buildings c. devices d. places
3. After the accident, the .... took the boy to the hospital. [قنا - قنا ٢٠٢٣]
   a. helmet b. ambulance c. vet d. crosswalk
4. When we breathe .... air, we cough and feel sick. [القاهرة - المطرية ٢٠٢٣]
   a. good b. clean c. polluted d. clear

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

travel - by - rides - plane - on

My name is Hani. I go to school (1) .... foot. I love walking. My school is near my house. My sister goes to work (2) .... bus. My brother (3) .... his bike to work. My mom takes a taxi. My dad drives to work every day. We (4) .... to Aswan by plane. [البحيرة - شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣]

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities try to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about "........................" .

a. Clean city b. Snow c. Air pollution d. Stars

2. In China people use ....

a. bikes b. cars c. electric buses d. trains

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How do cars make air pollution ?

....

4. How does England try to stop air pollution ?

....

[أسيوط - صدفة ٢٠٢٣]

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I love traveling .... [on] car.
2. The bus moves .... [in] the road.
3. You need to .... [looks] left and right to cross the road.
4. She .... [mustn't] go to the hospital. She is sick.

6 Punctuate the following.

we travel on water by ship or boat [سوهاج - المراغة ٢٠٢٣]

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

How to be safe on roads مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

Guiding elements :

- helmet
- seat belt

[قنا - قنا ٢٠٢٣]

....

....

....

....

....

....

STOP HERE!

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

تدريبات خاصة بطلاب الأزهر الشريف.

▶ Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I go to school .... [by train – on foot – by car]
2. When I'm ...., I take the bus. [late - early - hungry]
3. I like traveling by .... around the city. [ship – bus – plane]

▶ Read and complete the dialogue.

rail - train - favorite - travel

Rana : What's your (1) .... means of transportation ?

Dad : I love traveling by (2) ....

Rana : How does a train (3) .... ?

Dad : It travels on a (4) ....

▶ Choose the correct answer.

1. My favorite transportation is a ....
   a. pizza b. table c. ship d. desk
2. .... buses don't make pollution.
   a. Gas b. Electric c. Water d. Liquid
3. I go to school .... bus.
   a. from b. on c. by d. with
4. You need .... left and right before crossing the road.
   a. look b. to look c. looks d. looked
5. After the accident, the .... moved the man to the hospital.
   a. skateboard b. ambulance c. bike d. ship

▶ Reorder.

1. do - How - get to - you - school ?

....

2. far - my - My house - is - from - school.

....

3. kind - Our teachers - very - are.

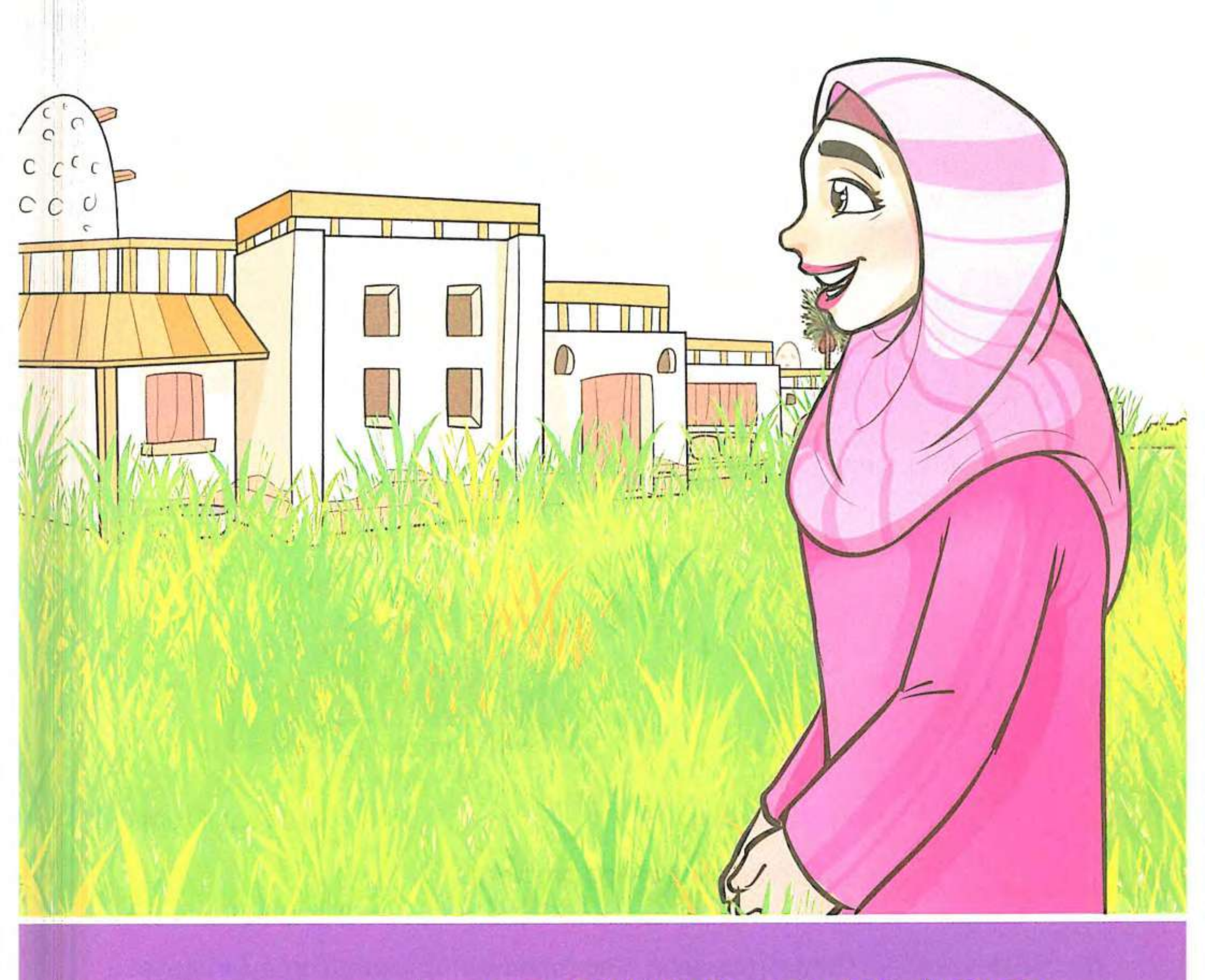
....

4. crosswalk - the road - at - They - cross - the.

....

5. are – camels – the road - There - sometimes – on.

....



Unit **12**

DALIA SAVES THE VILLAGE !

داليا تنقذ القرية !

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور













⭐ The main ideas of the story

• الأفكار الرئيسية للقصة

- The importance of social media in solving problems.

  - أهمية وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى فى حل المشكلات.

- We can develop our thinking by searching for new information on the internet.

  - يمكننا تنمية أفكارنا بالبحث عن معلومات جديدة عبر الانترنت.

- Throwing garbage in the Nile has harmful effects on the growth of the agricultural crops.

  - إلقاء القمامة فى نهر النيل له آثار ضارة على نمو المحاصيل الزراعية.

• Help your child identify the picture dictionary and the main ideas of the story.

- ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على القاموس المصور والأفكار الرئيسية للقصة.

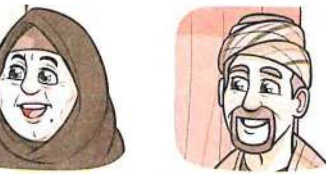
Story Map

خريطة القصة

The characters الشخصيات





Gameela جميلة | Tarek طارق | Waleed وليد | Dalia داليا | grandma الجدة | grandpa الجد

The setting المكان و الزمان

Places الأماكن

- Dalia's house
  منزل داليا
- Dalia's grandparents' house
  منزل أجداد داليا
- Dalia's village
  قرية داليا

Time الوقت

- one evening
  ذات مساء

Story plot حبكة القصة







Beginning

- Dalia does research about crops in Egypt.
  - داليا تجرى بحث عن المحاصيل فى مصر.
- The crops are not growing well in the village.
  - المحاصيل لا تنمو بطريقة جيدة فى القرية.
- Dalia contacts everyone in the village on social media.
  - تتواصل داليا مع الجميع فى القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى.

Middle

- The irrigation canal is blocked with trash.
  - قناة الرى مسدودة بالقمامة.
- The villagers start to clear the trash.
  - القرويين يبدأوا فى إزالة القمامة.
- Now the water isn't polluted.
  - الآن المياه ليست ملوثة.

End

- The water comes back and the crops grow again.
  - تعود المياه وتنمو المحاصيل مرة أخرى.
- Some villagers start to grow wheat.
  - يبدأ بعض القرويين فى زراعة القمح.
- The villagers make bread and biscuits to sell them.
  - يصنع القرويين الخبز والبسكويت لبيعهم.

A village had a problem القرية لديها مشكلة



What was the village's problem ? ما هى مشكلة القرية ؟

- In the village, they had no irrigation and some of the crops weren't very good.
- The irrigation canal was blocked with trash.

- في القرية لم يكن لديهم ري وبعض المحاصيل كانت غير جيدة.
- كانت قناة الري مسدودة بالقمامة.



What was Dalia's solution ? ما هو حل داليا ؟

She told everyone in the village about the problem on social media. Everyone was excited to help.

أخبرت كل شخص فى القرية من خلال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى عن المشكلة. كل شخص كان متحمسًا للمساعدة..



What was the process ? ماذا كانت العملية ؟

They started to clear the trash from the water and try growing wheat.

بدأوا فى تنقية الماء من القمامة ومحاولة زراعة القمح.



What was the final conclusion ? ماذا كانت النتيجة الأخيرة ؟

Dalia saved her village. أنقذت داليا قريتها.



Why was Dalia's homework research important to the process ? لماذا كان بحث الواجب المنزلى الخاص بداليا مهم للعملية ؟

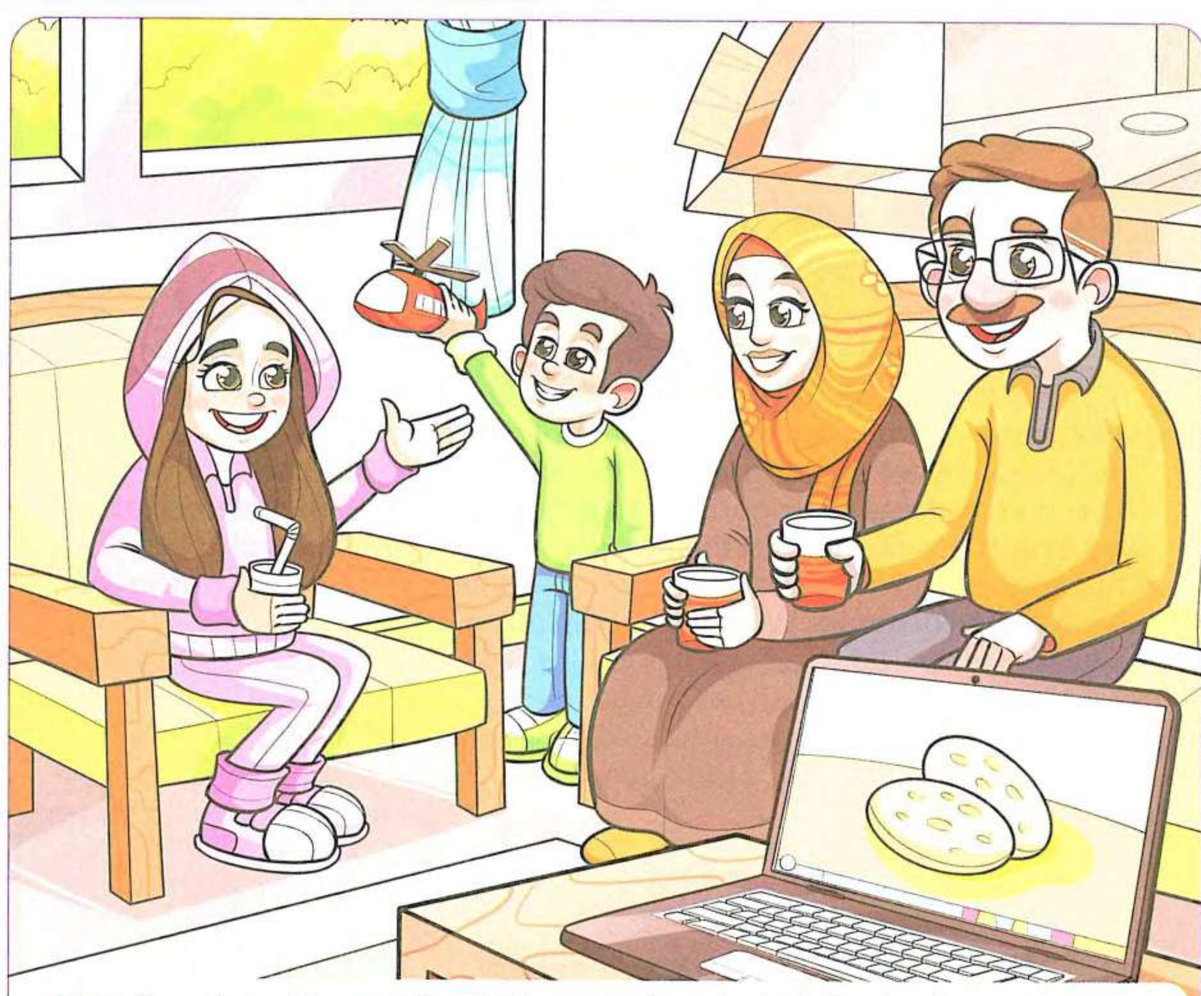
The research helped her how to help her village.

لقد ساعدها البحث فى كيفية مساعدة قريتها.

- Help your child identify Dalia's problem and how she solved it. - ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على مشكلة داليا وكيف قامت بحلها.

Lesson 1 | 1. The beginning
بداية القصة

Dalia's research بحث داليا



• Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite ?

• تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. ذات مساء كانت تقوم بواجبها المنزلى على جهاز الكمبيوتر الخاص بها. تقوم ببحث حول المحاصيل فى مصر، مثل القمح والذرة والأرز، وهو أمر مثير للاهتمام للغاية. القمح محصول مهم فى بلدنا ونستخدمه فى صناعة الخبز. داليا تستعرض صور الخبز المصرى اللذيذ. داليا تحب الخبز البلدى أكثر. ما هو المفضل لديك ؟

village	قرية	homework	واجب منزلى	research	بحث	wheat	قمح
maize	ذرة	country	دولة	baladi bread	خبز بلدى	crops	محاصيل

Irrigation problem مشكلة عملية الرى



- Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. "The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no irrigation," says Gameela to Dalia. "We need to help everyone in the village with their crops." Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, "But what can we do ?" Dalia says, "It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on social media. We need to help our village."

- والدة داليا، جميلة، تتحدث إلى والد داليا، وليد، الذى يبدو حزينًا. تقول جميلة لداليا : المحاصيل لا تنمو بشكل جيد فى القرية. هناك مشكلة فى المياه ولا يوجد لدينا عملية رى. "نحن بحاجة لمساعدة كل فرد فى القرية فى زراعة محاصيلهم." يقول شقيق داليا، طارق : "ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل ؟" هنا قالت داليا، "الأمر بسيط للغاية. دعونا نتواصل مع كل شخص فى القرية على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. نحن بحاجة لمساعدة قريتنا".

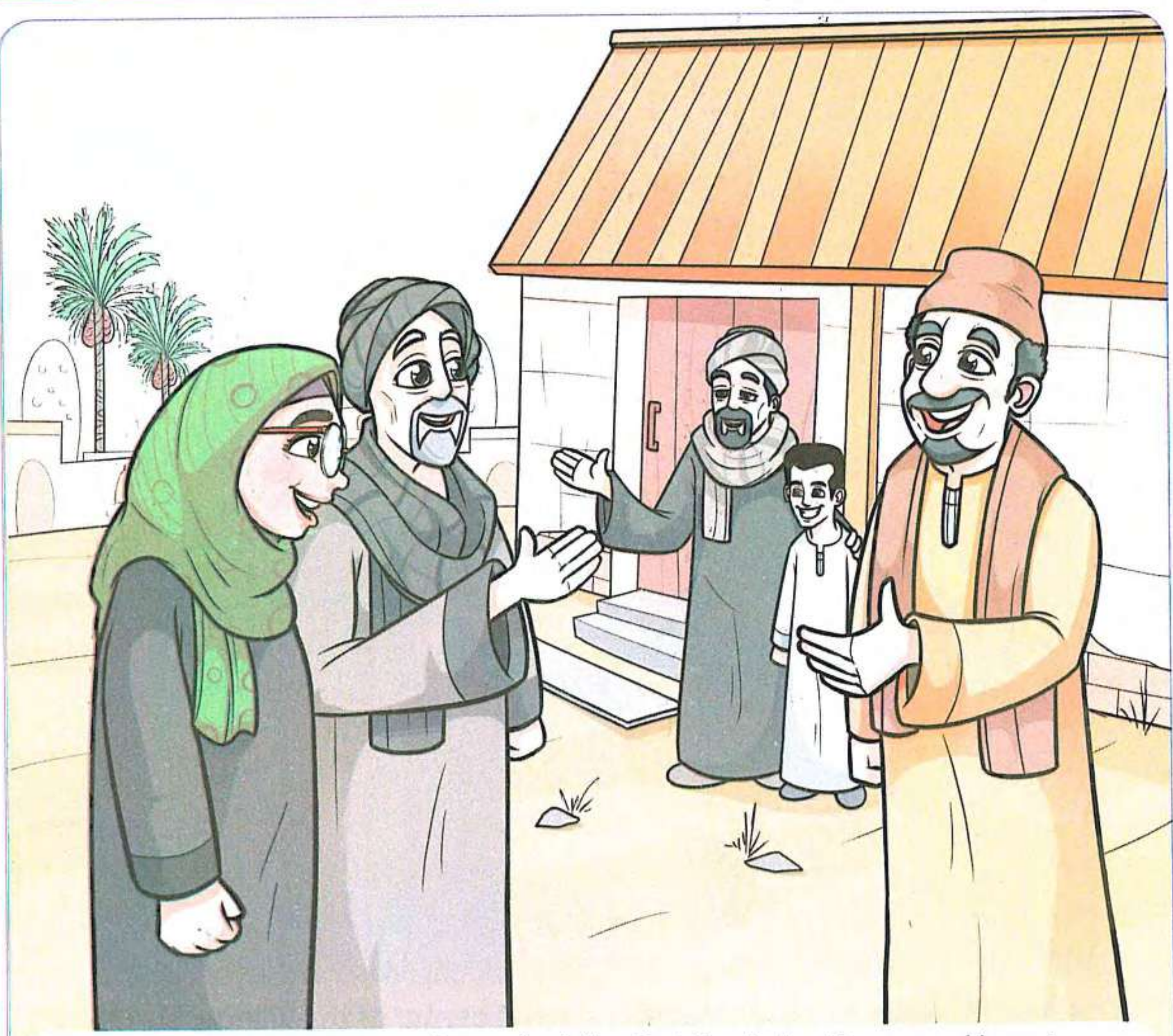


speak	يتحدث	grow	ينمو	simple	بسيط
irrigation	عملية الرى	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	problem	مشكلة
need	يحتاج	looks sad	يبدو حزين	well	بشكل جيد

Lesson 1 | 2. The Middle

منتصف القصة

Irrigation canal قناة الرى



- Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of villagers say they can help.

- عائلة داليا تحصل على المياه من النيل. لكن قناة الرى لا تعمل. إنها أخبرت الجميع فى القرية عن هذه المشكلة من خلال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، ثم التقت بالجميع فى الساحة الرئيسية. وبادر كثير من القرويين بتقديم المساعدة.

villagers	قرويين	work	تعمل	square	ساحة / ميدان	everyone	الجميع
main	رئيسى	meet	يقابل	irrigation canal	قناة الرى	the Nile	نهر النيل

Cooperation to solve the irrigation problem

التعاون لحل مشكلة الرى



- The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help. Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

- فى اليوم التالى يجتمع الجميع فى وسط القرية. يأتى بعض الناس سيرًا على الأقدام والبعض الآخر بالدراجة. يأتى بعض الناس بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى للمساعدة. الجميع متحمس جدًا للمساعدة فى حل المشكلة. إنهم يلتقون فى منزل أجداد داليا. تقدم لهم جدة داليا الشاى والكعك المحلى.

together	معًا	center	وسط	boat	قارب	excited	متحمس
cookies	كعك محلى	house	منزل	tea	شاى	give	يعطى

The effects of throwing trash in the Nile

آثار إلقاء القمامة فى نهر النيل.



- Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with trash - plastic bottles and household things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, "We need to start work and clean the water." The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

- تذهب داليا وعائلتها لرؤية المشكلة. قناة الرى التى تجلب المياه من النيل مسدودة بالقمامة - الزجاجات البلاستيكية والمخلفات المنزلية. كما توجد بعض النباتات فى الماء. يقول طارق : "يجب أن نبدأ العمل وننظف المياه". الماء ليس عميقًا جدًا ويبدأون فى تنظيف القمامة. قاموا بملء ٢٠ كيس نفايات بالقمامة. الآن الماء غير ملوث.

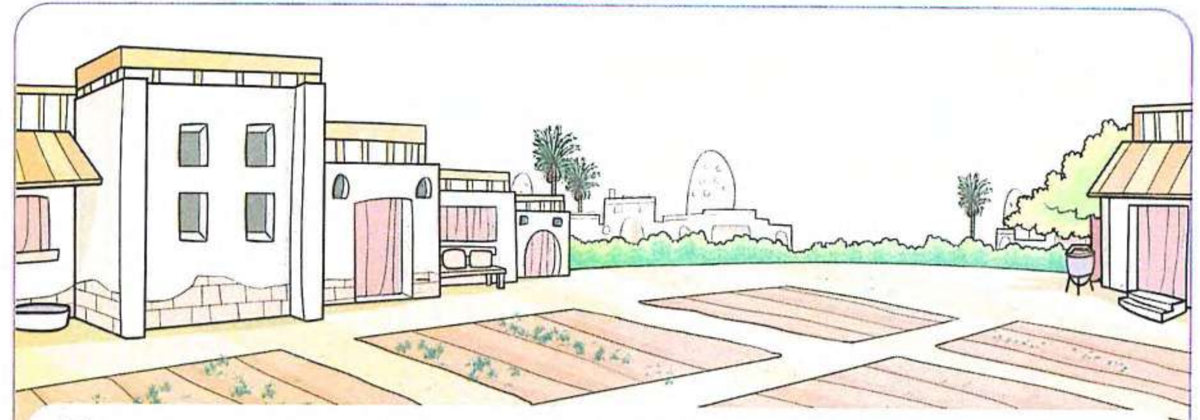


bring	يجلب	canal	قناة (مائية)	block	يسد/يحجز
trash	مهملات/قمامة	deep	عميق	clear	يزيل
clean	ينظف	polluted	ملوث	household	مخلفات منزلية

Lesson 1 | 3. The End

نهاية القصة

Dalia's plan خطة داليا



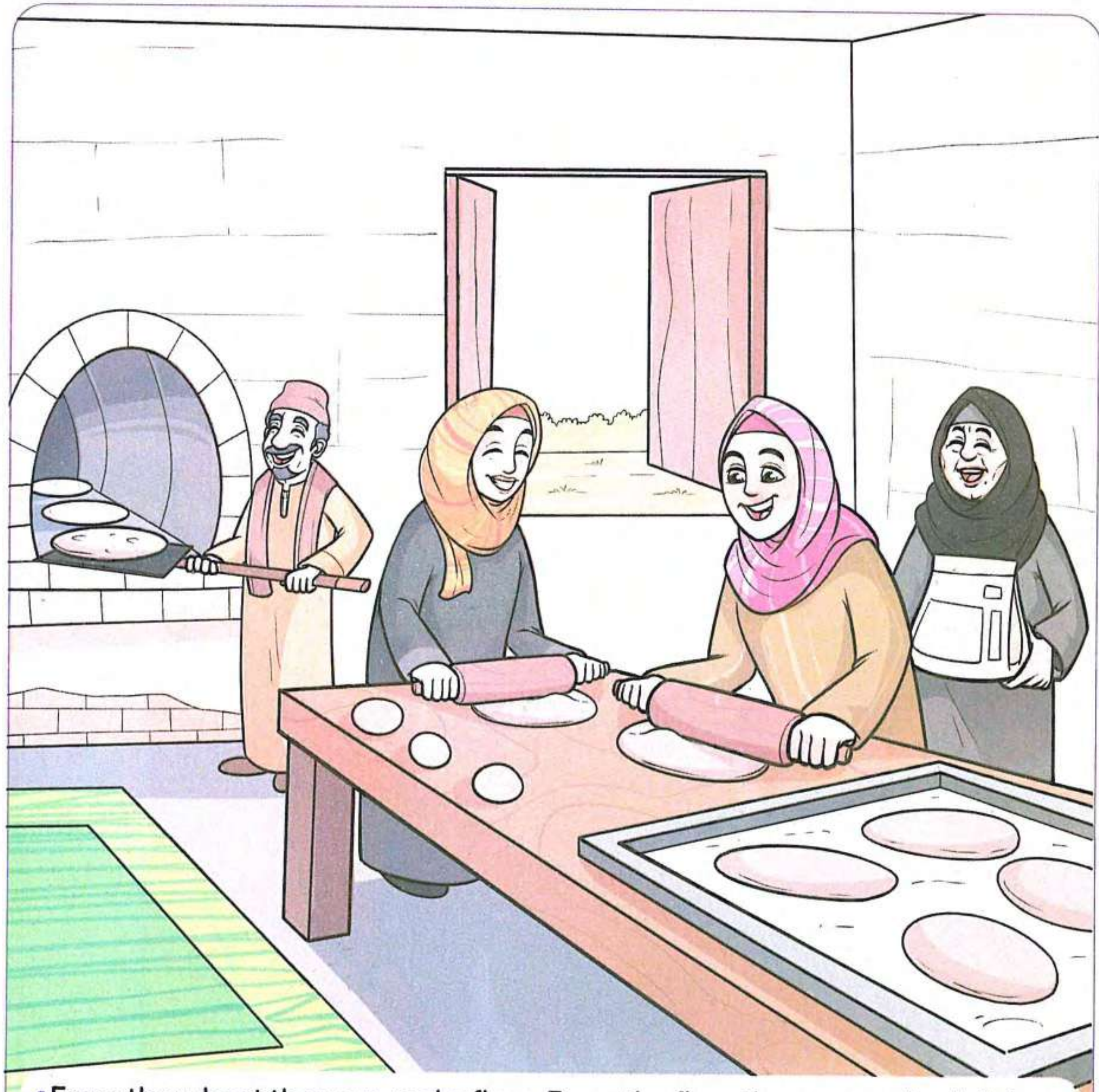
- The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good. Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat - she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes. Some villagers like the idea - they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

- تعود المياه إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مرة أخرى. الجميع سعداء جدًا. يمكنهم زراعة المحاصيل فى أراضيهم ويمكنهم بيع الفاكهة والخضروات لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل. لكن بعض المحاصيل ليست جيدة جدًا. داليا لديها خطة. تعتقد أن القرويين يمكنهم إنتاج المزيد من المحاصيل الزراعية (الطعام). تقول إن عليهم تجربة القمح - تخبرهم عن بحثها. تقول إن القمح ينمو جيدًا فى مصر وهو رائع لصنع الخبز والكعك اللذيذ. يُبدى بعض القرويين إعجابهم بالفكرة ويبدأوا بزراعة القمح فى بعض حقولهم.



land	أرض	buy	يشترى	become	يصبح	easier	أسهل	try	يحاول
delicious	لذيذ	field	حقل	idea	فكرة	come back	يعود	plan	خطة

How to make Egyptian bread كيفية صنع الخبز المصرى

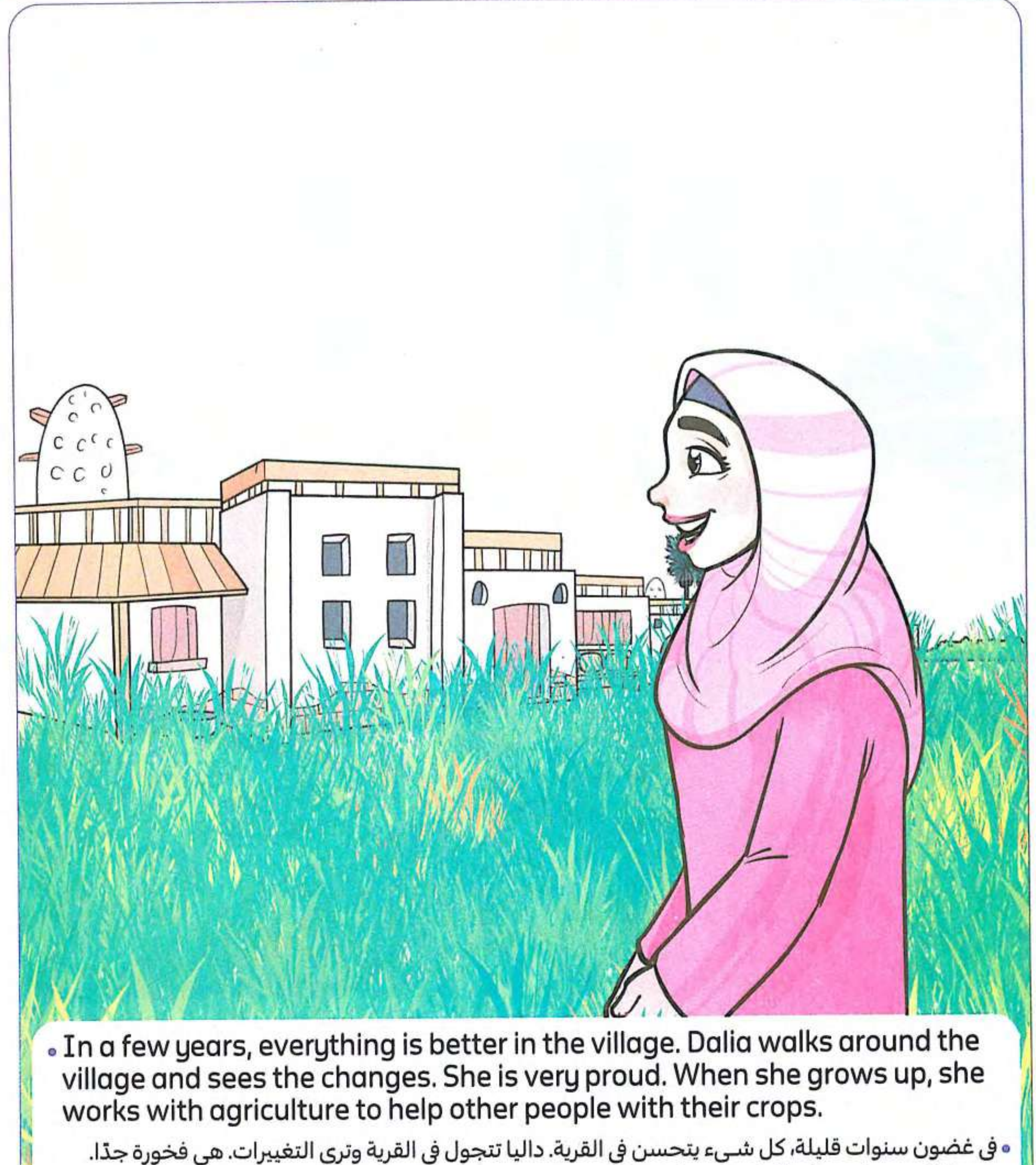


• From the wheat they can make flour. From the flour they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

• يمكنهم صنع الدقيق من القمح. يمكنهم صنع خبز مصرى لذيذ من الدقيق. يمكن للجدة أن تُعد المزيد من الكعك المحلى الرائع. يصنع القرويون الخبز والكعك المحلى لبيعه فى القرى الأخرى.

make	يصنع	flour	دقيق	Egyptian	مصرى	awesome	رائع

Life is good الحياة رائعة



better	أفضل	changes	تغييرات	proud	فخور	agriculture	الزراعة
few years	سنوات قليلة	around	حول	grow up	ينمو / يكبر		

General Exercises on Story

تدريبات عامة على القصة

1 Read and complete.

wheat - social media - irrigation

1. We use .... to make cookies.
2. The .... canal in Dalia's village was blocked with trash.
3. Dalia contacted everyone in the village on ....

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Dalia is a student. ☐
2. The irrigation canal was blocked with trash. ☐
3. The villagers saw Dalia's message on TV. ☐

3 Read and answer.

1. What does Dalia want to be ?

....

2. Do you think Dalia is a helpful girl ? Why ?

....

4 Read and put in order.

☐ The irrigation canal that brings water is blocked with trash.

☐ The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

☐ There is a problem with the water and they have no irrigation.

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The crops are not growing .... in the village.

a. sadly b. happily c. well d. slowly

2. Dalia has a ....

a. map b. plan c. plane d. book

3. Dalia lives in a ....

a. village b. town c. city d. street

GENERAL REVISION on Units 10, 11 & 12

مراجعة عامة على الوحدات [١٠، ١١، ١٢]

I Vocabulary

message	رسالة	chameleon	حرباء	pros	إيجابيات
chat	محادثة	website	موقع إلكترونى	cons	سلبيات
password	كلمة مرور	device	جهاز	truck	شاحنة
research	بحث	sports center	مركز رياضى	neighbor	جار
log in	يدخل على موقع إلكترونى	personal	شخصى	computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى				

bus	حافلة	plane	طائرة	pollution	تلوث
rail	سكة حديدية	car	سيارة	crosswalk	طريق عبور المشاه
boat	قارب	bike	دراجة	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
ship	سفينة	seat belt	حزام أمان	crash	تصادم
metro	مترو الأنفاق	helmet	خوذة	snail	حلزون
walking	السير	road	طريق	float	يطفو
balcony	شرفة - بلكونة	safe	أمن	dream	حلم

II Language

Giving advice

Subj. الفاعل + should / shouldn't + inf. ....

- You should only give your phone number to people you know.
- You shouldn't give your password to anyone who asks.

need / need to

Subj. الفاعل + need + noun ....
Subj. الفاعل + need to + inf. ....

- We need safe road.
- You need to look left and right to cross the road safely.

must / mustn't

Subj. الفاعل + must / mustn't + inf. ....

- You must wear a helmet on the bike.
- You mustn't run on the roads.



Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع
الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Lesson 1:

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile is about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is very important. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

Lesson 2:

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Last year, I visited my Grandpa's village. It was a quiet, and a beautiful place. There were lots of trees, but there weren't any trains. Grandpa's parents moved to this village when he was three. He played football near his home.

Lesson 3:

Pop Quiz on phonics

*** Listen and write the missing sound.**

1. rain   2. mice
3. light   4. see

General Exercises on lesson 3

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased and excited. He gave his friend grass and seeds.

Lessons 4 & 5:

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

I'm Omar. In the past, our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays. Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

Test 1 on Unit 7 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The Nile is very important for our lives. It's the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. It helps us to drink and grow food. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

Test 2 on Unit 7 :

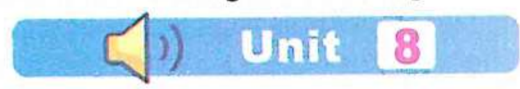
*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

I remember my first day of school. I was nervous. I wanted to cry at the school gate. I put on a green T-shirt, gray pants and black shoes. My dad drove me to school.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

*** Listen and choose the correct answer.**

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it. The Nile is very important for all people because they need it for drinking and washing.



Lesson 1:

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Last week was my father's birthday. My mom made nice cakes. I had two slices of cake. I drank three cartons of juice. My sister had a bar of chocolate. There were five packets of cookies. My brother had a bottle of water and a packet of cookies.

Lesson 2 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Last week, I visited my grandma. She lived by the sea. We saw some old photos and sang songs, but time was short. We felt happy. We will go again soon, early September.

Lesson 3 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Eid Al-Fitr happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon. Kahk are delicious cookies. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. We can buy kahk from a bakery.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees represent new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored balls and stars. People in different countries like celebrating different festivals.

Test 3 on Unit 8 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say " Eid Mubarak" to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious cookies like kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them.

Test 4 on Unit 8 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

My name's Sally. I went to the market yesterday to buy some groceries. I bought two packets of cookies. I bought three cartons of milk. I bought three bags of flour to bake a cake. I paid seventy pounds at the checkout.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

*** Listen and choose the correct answer.**

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

February Test :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

I was very nervous at my first day of school. I lived in Luxor. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.



Unit 9

Lesson 1 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Hide and seek is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it. One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them.

Lesson 2 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Chinese New Year is in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes. There was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck.
The amount of money usually had an even number at the end because they said this was good luck.

Lesson 3 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Egypt makes a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports ! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

Test 5 on Unit 9 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

The Egyptian food can be described with one word : wonderful. The most famous is Ful Medames. It's beans cooked slowly. Ful Medames is served with olive oil and garlic. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup. It's very delicious.

Test 6 on Unit 9 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

It's our class Sports Day. The Sports Day is in the school yard. It's on Tuesday. We wear T-shirts and shorts. We play lots of games and eat lots of cakes. We also have fun.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

*** Listen and choose the correct answer.**

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.



Lesson 1 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Last week, Hani had homework about hippos. He logged into the library website. He created a password. He found information. He did research on his tablet.

Lesson 2 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

There are a lot of pros and cons for social media. You can play games online. You can have fun. But some people can bully you when you are on social media. They can take your personal information so you should keep your password secret.

Lessons 4 & 5 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Computer games are a fun way to spend time. Children can spend many hours playing games. The bad thing about computer games is that children look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. You shouldn't spend all your time playing computer games. You should go outside, read books, and help at home.

Test 7 on Unit 10 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

To stay safe online, you should have a very strong password. You should speak to people you know online. You shouldn't speak to strangers on the internet. You shouldn't be an online bully.

Test 8 on Unit 10 :

*** Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

Last week, I had some homework. The homework was about chameleons.

I created a password to log into a library website. I made a presentation with Hala. Our teacher loved our presentation.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

* Listen and choose the correct answer.

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun. Social media helps us talk to our friends and family. Many students can find information for their homework by using social media.

March Test :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

Egypt is a special country. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. Our food can be described with one word : wonderful ! We are very friendly to visitors. Our movies are famous.



Lesson 1 :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

I'm Adam. I'm 9 years old.
I go to school by car. My favorite transportation is a bus. Sometimes, I go with my friends by bus. When I travel by car, I'm on the road. I travel by train on holidays.

Lesson 2 :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

It's important to be safe on the roads. Children are in danger on the roads. So we need a seat belt in our cars. We also need to cross the road when the light is green. We need to look left and right before we cross the road.

Lesson 3 :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

In Gharbia, farmers wanted to have cleaner air. To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals. They also used it to cover their crops.

Test 9 on Unit 11 :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

As a family, we decided to change some things to stop pollution. My father now goes to work with his friend in the same car. My mother takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now cycle to school. My sister walks to school.

Test 10 on Unit 11 :

* Listen and circle the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

I live in Cairo with my parents. Cairo is a big city. I take the bus to school because it's very far. I go to the market with my mother on foot because it's near our house. When we want to visit my grandma in Alexandria, we travel by train.

تدريبات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

* Listen and choose the correct answer.

I go to school on foot. When I'm late, I take the bus. I like traveling by bus around the city because we travel slowly and I see the city.



Answers of Topics

إجابات الموضوعات الخاصة بكتاب الشرح



Unit 7

Lesson 1

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. It is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles.

Lesson 2

"Your village in the past"

I grew up in a village. It was very quiet in the past. There weren't many cars and trucks in the streets.

Lesson 3

"City life"

In the city, the smoke from the cars covers the stars. The city is pretty and full of bright lights. The city is exciting.

Lessons 4 & 5

"Your first day of school"

Yesterday was my first day of school. I got up at 6:00. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants and black shoes. I was very happy.

Test 1 on Unit 7

"Your town in the past and now"

In the past, my town was quiet. It had many parks. Now, there is too much traffic and noise.

Test 2 on Unit 7

"The Nile"

The Nile is very important to us. It's the longest river in the world. It has two branches. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.





Unit 8

Lesson 1

"Food and drinks"

We have a lot of food and drinks at home. I like to eat a slice of cake and a bottle of milk for breakfast.

Lesson 2

"The beach"

Last summer, I went to the beach with my family. We swam in the sea. We saw lots of fish and sang songs.

Lesson 3

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr happens in the first day of Shawwal. In Eid Al-Fitr, we eat kahk. We go to the mosques. We say Eid Mubarak.

Lessons 4 & 5

"The Christmas tree"

People decorate Christmas trees with lights, colored balls, and stars. These trees are always green. The Christmas trees represent new life.

Test 3 on Unit 8

"The month of Ramadan"

In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. They don't eat or drink until sunset. It's a time to help other people.

Test 4 on Unit 8

"Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid. People go to

the mosque and spend time with their families. They wear new clothes.

February Test

"Your first day of school"

I remember first day of school. I put on a blue shirt and black trousers. I was nervous at the school gate. But I made many friends, so it was a nice day.



Unit 9

Lesson 1

"The musical chairs game"

The musical chairs game is an easy game. You need chairs and some music to play it. You need to run but be ready to sit when the music stops. We play it with our friends.

Lesson 2

"Chinese New Year festival"

Chinese New Year is an interesting festival. They give red envelopes to their friends and wish them good luck. It is a very popular festival.

Lesson 3

"Why Egypt is special"

Egypt is famous for its history. It has rich culture. The Egyptian food is wonderful. The Egyptians are very helpful and hospitable people. That's why Egypt is a special country.

Lessons 4 & 5

"A birthday party"

My birthday party will be next Sunday at 7:00. We will play games. We will sing and play music. I will invite all of my friends.

Test (5) on Unit 9

"Hide and seek game"

The seeker closes his eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide and the seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker.

Test (6) on Unit 9

"Your birthday party"

I'm having my birthday party next Sunday. I want to play some party games. It will be lots of fun. Lots of people from my school are coming.



Unit 10

Lesson 1

"Chameleons"

A chameleon is a type of lizards. Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes.

Lesson 2

"How to stay safe online"

We use social media every day. You should be careful when you go online. You should keep your password and personal information secret. You shouldn't tell anyone your birthday and your phone number.

Lesson 3

"Cons of computer games"

Computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside.

Lessons 4 & 5

"The pros of computer games"

Computer games are sometimes good for you. Some games need teams,



GUIDE

Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

Parents' Guide دليـل ولـى الأمـر

CONNECT

الصف الرابع الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى



4th Primary 2024
SECOND TERM

طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤
وتعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤





AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com
15014

Contents

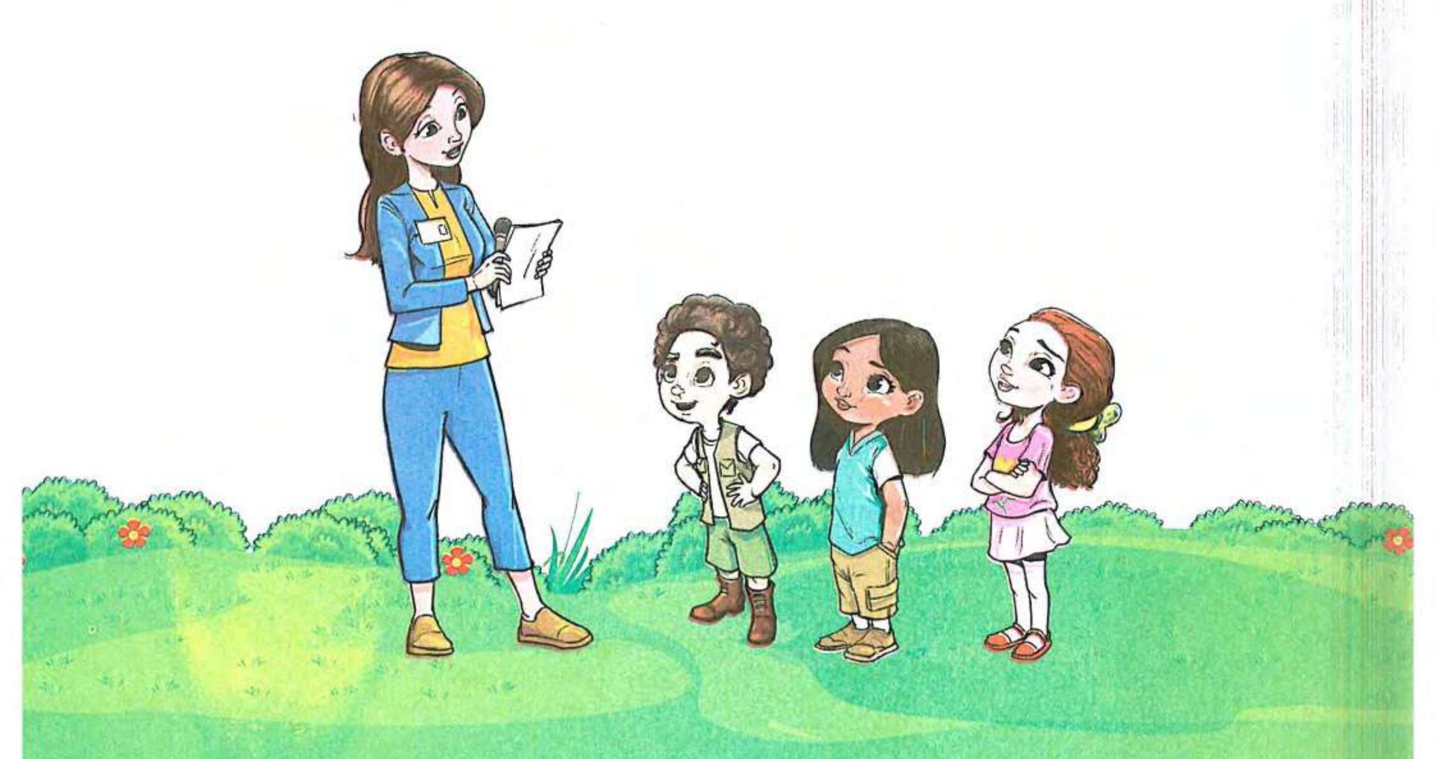
1

El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى (التسميع)

2

A week is enough مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



PART 1

El-Moasser Homework Interactive

كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى (التسميع)



Dictation on Lessons



١ - إملاء على دروس الوحدة
٢- أهم المفردات اللغوية في الوحدة

Part Two

Accumulative assessments on Dictation



تدريب تراكمى على الإملاء



PART 1

UNIT 7

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word	Sentence
....	مدينة كبيرة	1. The Nile has two.................in Egypt.
....	عاصمة	2. Cairo is a big................. .
....	واحة	3. We can find an.................in the desert.
....	غابة	4. Cairo is the ....of Egypt.
....	نهر	
....	فرع	

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word	Sentence
....	فضول	1. There are many visitors in this ....
....	قرية	2. I'm .... to know more about her.
....	مساحة / فضاء	3. We played football on this ....
....	شاحنة	4. My uncle is a .... driver.
....	شارع	
....	الحضر	

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word	Sentence
....	غابة	1. We'll climb the................. .
....	تمساح	2. Turtles are................. .
....	جبل	3. The.................of the world now is about 3 billion.
....	زواحف	4. There are many trees in the................. .
....	صحراء	
....	تعداد السكان	

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word	Sentence
....	زوار	1. Many.................. come to visit Egypt every year.
....	ذاكرة	2. The village is very.................. .
....	معدن	3. He crossed the.................. carefully.
....	طريق	4. Where's my jewelry.................. ?
....	هادئ	
....	صندوق	

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

فئران	....
مفزوع	....
دخان	....
الريف	....
فجوة / ثقب	....
مغزى أخلاق	....

1. She saw two .... in the garden so she was scared.
2. There's a huge .... in the wall.
3. The .... of the story is to be kind with other people.
4. There is too much .... in the city.

Lessons 4 & 5

جار	....
بنطلون	....
حقيبة ظهر	....
مركز تسوق	....
يبكى	....
متجر أحذية	....

1. My .... is heavy, so my mom helps me carry it.
2. We can buy many different things from the ....
3. My school uniform is green T-shirt and black ....
4. We have a kind .... on the second floor.



Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

مسرور / مبتهج	....
خائف	....
روائح	....
ضوضاء	....
صوت	....
جميل	....

1. She was .... when she saw the fox.
2. The .... is incredibly loud.
3. I'm very .... about the result.
4. I'm happy to hear your ....

Lessons 4 & 5

متوتر / عصبى	....
بوابة	....
كهرباء	....
يتذكر	....
يقود	....
سيارات تعمل بالوقود	....

1. The TV needs .... to work.
2. .... are very noisy.
3. The boy is very .... about his exam.
4. There are many parents waiting at the school ....

II Important 15 words

• كون قاموسك اللغوى بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.



city





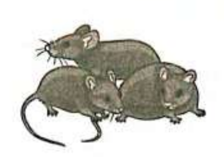














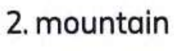




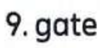


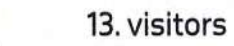
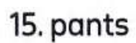




1. oasis
2. mountain

3. the Nile

4. truck
5. road
6. mice

7. hole
8. city
9. gate

10. backpack
11. forest
12. metal box

13. visitors

14. nervous
15. pants




Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

كعك محلى ....
زجاجة ....
صابون ....
سميد ....
قطعة ....
يستمتع ....

1. I like having a packet of .... for dessert.
2. She had a .... of water.
3. I washed my face with ....
4. Basbousa is a dessert made from ....

Lesson 2

حلوى (تقدم بعد وجبة الطعام) ....
أخطبوط ....
طبق ....
شاطئ ....
عميق ....
فيلم ....

1. The .... lives in the sea.
2. What's your favorite comedy .... ?
3. We had an apple pie for ....
4. Having fish and rice is my favorite ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

علبة من ....
موز ....
لحم ....
عصير ....
جُبن ....
شيكولاتة ....

1. .... are my favorite fruit.
2. I bought .... from the butcher's.
3. I ate two bars of ....
4. He drank two cartons of ....

Lesson 2

وجبة ....
محبوب / رائع ....
أغنية ....
رحلة (قصيرة) ....
يصطاد ....
قصيدة ....

1. My mom made us a delicious ....
2. I sang a beautiful ....
3. My grandpa .... a fish.
4. We're going on a .... to Marsa Matrouh.

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

عيد الفطر	....
جامع - مسجد	....
قمر	....
مخبز	....
مكسرات	....
غروب الشمس	....

1. We celebrate .... after Ramadan.
2. Kahk have .... , sugar and honey in them.
3. The baker bakes his bread in the ....
4. People went to the .... in Eid Al-Fitr to pray.

Lessons 4 & 5

حفلة	....
الجدة الكبرى	....
ألعاب	....
مميز / خاص	....
يزين	....
أضواء	....

1. People .... Christmas trees at Christmas.
2. My birthday .... is tomorrow.
3. My .... is very kind. She always gives me presents.
4. I like playing .... with my friends.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

شم النسيم	....
يصوم - صيام	....
كحك	....
نزهة خلوية	....
حديقة عامة	....
احتفال	....

1. Egyptians eat .... to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr.
2. Muslims .... during Ramadan.
3. Eid Al-Fitr is a very important Islamic ....
4. We color boiled eggs at ....

Lessons 4 & 5

يمثل	....
نجوم	....
كبير / ضخم	....
كرات ملونة	....
يرمى	....
عمة / خالة	....

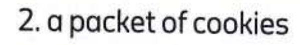
1. There are many .... in the sky.
2. The crocodile is .... and scary.
3. Christmas trees .... new life.
4. I used .... to decorate my room.

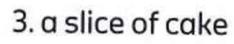
II Important 15 words

• كون قاموسك اللغوى بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

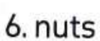

1. celebration


2. a packet of cookies


3. a slice of cake

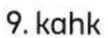
4. a piece of cheese

5. octopus


6. nuts

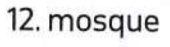
7. a bottle of water

8. picnic


9. kahk


10. Christmas tree

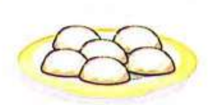
11. a bar of chocolate


12. mosque

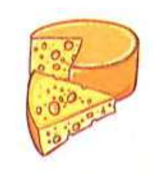
13. moon

14. dried fish

15. a carton of juice



























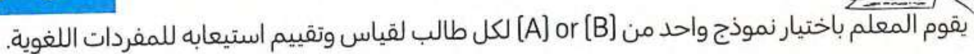






Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة


يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word
....	ألعاب
....	طرد / هدية
....	فائز
....	شخص
....	يحترم
....	مشهور

1. We should .... other people.
2. He got the gold medal. He was the ....
3. The children often play.................. .
4. Musical chairs game is the most................. game in Egypt.

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word
....	دحرجة / دوار
....	يضحك
....	ظرف
....	تل / هضبة
....	عادات
....	على قيد الحياة

1. The boy is silly. He always ....at his friends.
2. Noha is lucky. She is still.................... after the accident.
3. Cheese.................... is a weird festival.
4. Did you put the letter inside the....................?

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

Meaning	Word
....	لاعب
....	باحث
....	تقليدى
....	يغلف
....	واسع
....	يعد

1. There are ten .... in my team.
2. The playground in our school is very................ .
3. She .... the present and gave it to her mom.
4. He is a baby. He can't................to ten.

Lesson 2

Meaning	Word
....	طائرة ورقية
....	طماطم
....	فوضوى
....	غريب
....	طين
....	سخيف

1. We throw old....................at each other in La Tomatina Festival.
2. She fell down and she was covered in.................... .
3. Let's fly a....................up into the sky.
4. Her house is very.................... Everything is on the ground.

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

فول مدمس	....
شراب محلى	....
لعبة الكاراتيه	....
مؤلف	....
وطنى - قومى	....
فخور بـ	....

1. An .... is a person who writes movies and stories .
2. We are .... our Egyptian culture.
3. .... is a traditional breakfast food in Egypt.
4. Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous .... player.

Lessons 4 & 5

ساحة	....
يأتى / يحضر	....
يوم رياضى	....
معلومات	....
دعوة	....
مكتبة	....

1. We got their wedding .... today.
2. I went to the .... to read books.
3. I hope you can .... to the party.
4. What .... do you need to go to the party ?

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

ثوم	....
زيت زيتون	....
مضياف - كريم	....
تاريخ	....
يخدم - يقدم	....
منطقة	....

1. He was very .... to me when I came to his house.
2. Egypt is famous for its ....
3. The restaurant .... excellent Italian food.
4. A .... is part of a country.

Lessons 4 & 5

قائمة	....
يجهز	....
يدعو	....
مفقود	....
عنوان	....
ضيف	....

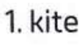
1. I .... my friends to my birthday party.
2. I need to have a shopping .... before going to the supermarket.
3. We're waiting for an important .... to arrive.
4. My .... is 99 Ahmed Helmy street.

II Important 15 words

• كون قاموسك اللغوى بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.















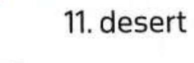












1. kite
2. cheese
3. garlic
4. birthday party
5. hide and seek
6. La Tomotina Festival
7. basbousa
8. syrup
9. musical chairs
10. pass the parcel
11. desert
12. red envelope
13. olive oil
14. winner
15. ful medames



PART 1
UNIT 10

Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I Write & Practice

Model A

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

كلمة مرور ....
يخطط ....
بحث ....
فكرة ....
عرض تقديمى ....
كمبيوتر لوحى ....

1. I like to watch movies on my................. .
2. My computer has a................. . You can't open it.
3. I................. to travel to Europe next summer.
4. She is doing................. about chameleons.

Lesson 2

يتنمر / تنمر ....
شخصى ....
أجهزة ....
آمن ....
يشارك ....
إيجابيات ....

1. Social media has................. and cons.
2. Some people can................. you online.
3. You should keep your................. information secret.
4. Cell phones are important ....

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

هاتف خلوى [محمول] ....
رسالة ....
يسجل الدخول إلى ....
ينسخ ....
مكتبة ....
يدردش ....

1. I................. with my friend on Facebook last night.
2. My................. is ringing.
3. My mom sent me a text................. .
4. I need to................. my email account to check my messages.

Lesson 2

إشارة / يشير ....
سر / سرى ....
مبدع ....
يتصل ....
يفحص / يتحقق ....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى ....

1. Millions of people visit YouTube and other .... sites daily.
2. People can................. you in photos on Facebook.
3. You should keep your password................. .
4. She is a very................. person. She draws beautiful paintings.

Model A

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

يفهم	....
صحى	....
شقة سكنية	....
ألعاب كمبيوتر	....
مشكلة	....
بالخارج	....

1. It is raining heavily, so we can't play ....
2. There are three bedrooms in our ....
3. Many children play .... to have fun.
4. I asked my parents to help me with my ....

Lessons 4 & 5

فريق	....
سبب	....
سلبيات	....
يكتشف	....
فى رأيي	....
يقضى	....

1. Smoke from cars is the .... for many problems.
2. Computer games have many pros and ....
3. My .... won the match yesterday.
4. .... , computer games are bad for children.

Or

Model B

Write the meaning → Complete the sentences

Lesson 3

أطفال	....
جار	....
مطعم	....
غير صحى	....
يقابل	....
يتوقف / يمنع	....

1. I ate a delicious meal at the ....
2. The .... are playing in the park.
3. My .... , Ali is always helpful and friendly.
4. It's .... to drink too much cola.

Lessons 4 & 5

يحل	....
جائزة	....
شاشة	....
إيجابيات	....
على الجانب الآخر	....
فى النهاية	....

1. Living in a small town has its .... and cons.
2. I need to clean my phone ....
3. Our team is working together to .... the problem.
4. The winner of the game won a wonderful ....

II Important 15 words

• كون قاموسك اللغوى بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

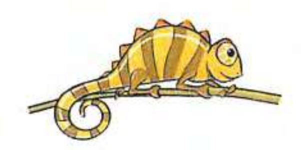


















1. restaurant
2. cell phone
3. social media
4. tablet
5. library
6. do research
7. message
8. children
9. apartment
10. website
11. chameleon
12. log in / into
13. chat
14. computer games
15. password



Dictation on Lessons

إملاء على دروس الوحدة

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

I Write & Practice

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 1

قطار	....
مركبات / عربات	....
يسافر	....
وسائل المواصلات	....
محطة	....
هواء / جو	....

1. When I travel by plane, I go through the ....
2. My favorite transportation is the ....
3. Cars, trucks and boats are ....
4. I .... to Luxor by train.

Lesson 2

طريق	....
إشارة المرور الخضراء	....
لافتة / علامة	....
دراجة نارية	....
سيارة إسعاف	....
خوذة	....

1. I always wear a .... when I ride my bike.
2. There is a car on the ....
3. The hospital has many .... to transport patients.
4. I rode my .... to my work today.

Write the meaning → **Complete the sentences**

Lesson 3

يشترى	....
يشارك	....
يحرق	....
طاقة شمسية	....
مواد كيميائية	....
تلوث	....

1. Electric buses don't make air ....
2. I .... a bedroom with my sister.
3. We can get .... from the sun.
4. Don't .... rice straw.

Lessons 4 & 5

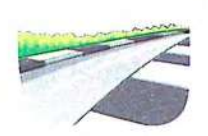
ينمى / يحسن	....
مصابيح	....
يقرر	....
شُرفة / بلكونة	....
مشاركة السيارة	....
عنوان فرعى	....

1. We can have many plants on our ....
2. Reading English books can .... your vocabulary.
3. We can have energy-saving .... in our apartment.
4. We .... to buy a present to our mom.

II Important 20 words

• كون قاموسك اللغوى بنفسك

أهم المفردات اللغوية المستهدفة فى الوحدة طبقاً لكتاب الوزارة ودليل المعلم ونواتج التعلم.

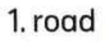
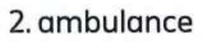
  

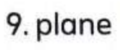
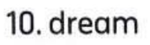


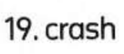
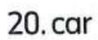
   


1. road

2. ambulance
3. snail
4. rain
5. boat
6. float
7. seat belt

8. pollution

9. plane

10. dream
11. helmet
12. train
13. rail

14. motorbike
15. ship
16. green light
17. bus
18. crowd

19. crash

20. car

PART 2

Accumulative assessments on Dictation



تدريب تراكمي على الإملاء

يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

Units 7,8,9 & 10

Model A

1. wonderful ....
2. cell phone ....
3. social media ....
4. branch ....
5. tablet ....
6. tag ....
7. log in ....
8. games ....

١. ساحة ....
٢. جار ....
٣. سر / سرى ....
٤. غير صحى ....
٥. مطعم ....
٦. ألعاب كمبيوتر ....
٧. شخصى ....
٨. مخيف ....

Model B

1. device ....
2. messy ....
3. password ....
4. copy ....
5. bully ....
6. turn off ....
7. share ....
8. website ....

١. لاعب ....
٢. حرباء ....
٣. مركز رياضى ....
٤. يتصل ....
٥. متسم بالاحترام ....
٦. يوافق أن ....
٧. عبر الأنترنت ....
٨. مبدع ....

Units 7,8,9,10 & 11

Model A

1. bus ....
2. chat ....
3. train ....
4. song ....
5. rail ....
6. ship ....
7. seat belt ....
8. birthday ....

١. دراجة نارية ....
٢. جائزة ....
٣. مستشفى ....
٤. مصدوم ....
٥. خطر ....
٦. مقابلة شخصية ....
٧. تلوث ....
٨. مركبة / عربة ....

Model B

1. plane ....
2. boat ....
3. safety ....
4. danger ....
5. message ....
6. go straight ....
7. crosswalk ....
8. famous ....

١. ضرورى ....
٢. سيارة إسعاف ....
٣. طاقة شمسية ....
٤. متسخ ....
٥. يخطط ....
٦. بحث ....
٧. قش الأرز ....
٨. مواد كيميائية ....

Units 7,8,9,10,11 & 12

Model A

1. unwrap ....
2. do research ....
3. wheat ....
4. transportation ....
5. traffic ....
6. celebrate ....
7. trash ....
8. presentation ....

١. لهب ....
٢. ذرة ....
٣. يغطى ....
٤. قناع وجه ....
٥. يقول ....
٦. يأتى ....
٧. مترو الأنفاق ....
٨. برج القاهرة ....

Model B

1. festival ....
2. irrigation canal ....
3. soil ....
4. great ....
5. breathe ....
6. rice straw ....
7. change ....
8. boiled eggs ....

١. يجيب ....
٢. يسقط ....
٣. دقيق القمح ....
٤. منتصف ....
٥. محصول ....
٦. يسمح ....
٧. ينتظر لأجل ....
٨. يجد ....

PART 2

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط

اليوم الأول والثانى

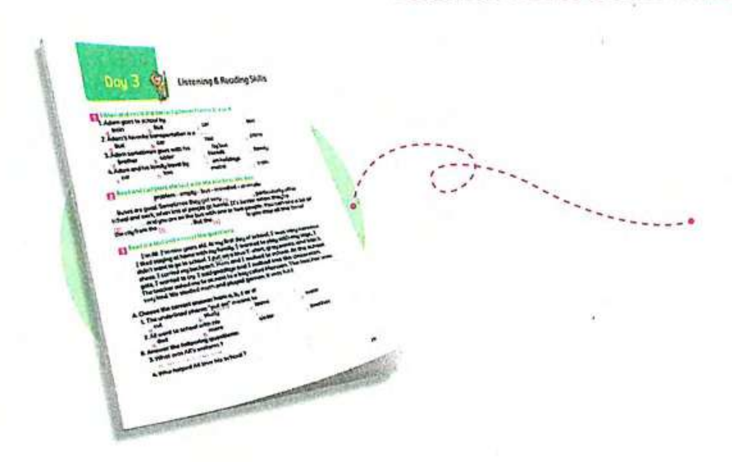
Vocabulary & Language

مراجعة عامة على اهم المفردات اللغوية التى وردت بالمنهج.

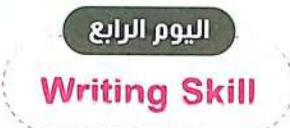
مراجعة عامة على اهم القواعد اللغوية التى وردت بالمنهج.

اليوم الثالث

Listening &Reading Skills



عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجات فى الامتحان.





عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على افضل درجة فى الامتحان.

اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

اختبارات مجمعة من امتحانات المحافظات، اختبارات للأزهر الشريف وللدمج.

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية وتعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٤



- ٢٠٠ اختبار مجمع من امتحانات المدارس لعام ٢٠٢٣ من مختلف المحافظات.
- اختبارات للأزهر الشريف.
- اختبار للدمج.



Vocabulary & Language

مراجعة عامة على اهم المفردات والقواعد اللغوية التى وردت بالمنهج.

I Vocabulary

Unit 7

village	قرية	curious	فضولى	mice	فئران
oasis	واحة	gate	بوابة	the country	الريف
forest	غابة	branch	فرع	backpack	حقيبة ظهر
electricity	كهرباء	moon	قمر	put on = wear	يرتدى
smoke	دخان	hole	فجوة / ثقب	reptiles	زواحف
population	تعداد السكان	visitor	زائر	bright	مشرق / لامع
pleased = delighted	راضٍ / مسرور	digging	حفر	memory	ذاكرة
		smells	روائح	bury	يدفن



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. There are many wild animals in this ....
   a. school b. forest c. river d. sea
2. The car passed through a ....
   a. gate b. school c. building d. sky
3. The Nile has two ....
   a. branches b. centers c. trees d. fish

Unit 8

neighbor	جار	a bottle of water	زجاجة من المياه	celebration	احتفال
decorate	يزين			mosque	مسجد
a packet of cookies	عبوة من الكعك المحلى	a slice of cake	شريحة من الكيك	frozen yogurt	زبادى مثلج
				trip	رحلة (قصيرة)
a bar of chocolate	قالب من الشيكولاتة	a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبن	dessert	حلوى (بعد الطعام)
				fast	صيام / يصوم

a carton of juice علبة كرتون من العصير	Muslim festival عيد / احتفال إسلامى	colored balls كرات ملونة
		Christmas tree شجرة الكريسماس
represent يمثل / يعلن عن	octopus أخطبوط	special مميز / خاص
beach شاطئ	Eid Al-Fitr عيد الفطر	huge كبير / ضخم



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The elephant is .... animal.
   a. huge b. small c. short d. wide
2. People .... during Ramadan. They don't eat or drink until the sunset.
   a. plane b. represent c. sleep d. fast
3. She usually has three .... of cheese for breakfast.
   a. bars b. bottles c. pieces d. cartons
4. The children always enjoy .... the Christmas tree.
   a. decorating b. reading c. helping d. cutting
5. We go to the .... in summer and swim there.
   a. mountain b. beach c. desert d. museum

Unit 9

play games	يلعب ألعاب	syrup	شراب مُحلى	rolling	دحرجة / دوار
unwrap	يزيل غلاف	seeker	باحث	player	لاعب
author	مؤلف	hide	يختبئ	popular	مشهور
picnic	نزهة خلوية	region	منطقة	celebrate	يحتفل
invitation	دعوة	culture	ثقافة	prize	جائزة
traditional	تقليدى	hospitable	مضياف	rich	غنى / ثرى
winner	فائز	New Year	رأس السنة (سنة جديدة)	invite	يدعو
parcel	طرد (بريدى)	pass	يمرر	wrap	يَلُف / يُغطِّى



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Don't .... your present until your birthday.
   a. unwrap b. eat c. tidy d. buy
2. Egyptians are .... people. They always welcome their guests.
   a. nervous b. unkind c. hospitable d. angry

3. We were .... Mona's birthday.
a. celebrating b. showing c. giving d. eating
4. I'm .... I have a lot of money.
a. poor b. rich c. hungry d. sad
5. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with ....
a. cheese b. salt c. syrup d. kahk

Unit 10

message يرسل رسالة / رسالة	website موقع إلكترونى	homework واجب منزلى
do research يجرى بحث	presentation عرض تقديمى	bully يتنمر / متنمر
password رقم سرى / كلمة مرور	personal شخصى	screen شاشة
social media وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	apartment شقة سكنية	tablet كمبيوتر لوحى
	restaurant مطعم	pros إيجابيات
cell phone هاتف خلوى	together سويًا / معًا	cons سلبيات
device جهاز	chat محادثة / يدردش	contact يتصل
tag شعار / إشارة	log in/into يسجل الدخول إلى	reason سبب
create ينشئ / ينتج	chameleon حرباء	computer games ألعاب الكمبيوتر



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I sent her a .... about the information.
a. game b. password c. message d. metal
2. Social .... is when we use computers and other devices.
a. media b. movie c. photo d. number
3. It's scary that people can .... you online.
a. reply b. take c. bully d. see
4. .... have amazing eyes.
a. Tablets b. Chameleons c. Computers d. Metals
5. I need to look at lots of .... and find some nice pictures.
a. words b. websites c. friends d. air

Unit 11

train قطار	rice straw قش الأرز	fall over يسقط أرضًا
taxi سيارة أجرة	lightbulbs مصابيح كهربائية	traffic حركة المرور
helmet خوذة	travel يسافر / ينتقل	motorbike دراجة نارية
seat belt حزام أمان	vehicle مَركَبة / عربة	energy-saving موفر للطاقة
crosswalk معبر المشاة	plane طائرة	rail سكة حديدية
chemicals مواد كيميائية	green light إشارة المرور الخضراء	transportation وسائل المواصلات

air pollution	تلوث الهواء	sign	لافتة / علامة	cross	يعبر
solar power	طاقة شمسية	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	electric buses	حافلات كهربائية



Pop Quiz on Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
   a. train b. bus c. plane d. bike
2. We cross the road at the ....
   a. crosswalk b. crash c. crossword d. cars
3. Cars make air pollution. They put .... into the air.
   a. woods b. chemicals c. metals d. stars

II Language

Unit 7

1

Tense	The Past Simple Tense
Formation	Subj. + التصريف الثانى للفعل / inf. + (ed/d/ied)
Usage	To talk about past actions. للحديث عن أحداث ماضية.
Examples	He looked at the tree.
Key words	yesterday, last ..., ... ago, in (2000) ...., in the past

2 Irregular plural nouns

There are many irregular plural nouns that are learnt as they are.
a mouse ⟶ mice



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Did Hana .... (drives) to her work ?
2. My neighbor .... (buy) a new car last week.
3. They .... (go) to China last summer holiday.
4. My family and I .... (see) a comedy movie last night.
5. Fady and Fares .... (play) basketball yesterday.
6. .... (Do) you watch TV last night ?

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية.

1. Yesterday, I .... to the mall after school.
   a. going b. goes c. went d. go
2. We .... not happy after losing the match yesterday.
   a. were b. was c. are d. is
3. He .... in London last week.
   a. live b. lived c. lives d. living
4. Hala .... with her toys yesterday.
   a. plays b. played c. playing d. play
5. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. isn't b. aren't c. don't d. doesn't

Unit 8

1 Quantifiers : محددات الكمية :



a slice of شريحه من	a piece of قطعة من	a packet of عبوة من	a bar of قالب من	a carton of عبوة كرتون من
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
cake	cheese	cookies	chocolate	juice

2 Irregular past simple verbs :

Formation	There's no rule, we just have to learn these verbs and their past forms as they are.
	fly ⟶ flew forget ⟶ forgot hear ⟶ heard win ⟶ won

05 min Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I bought a .... (carton) of chocolate.
2. I would like a packet .... (from) cookies.
3. She drank a .... (carton) of water.
4. I give my sister two .... (slice) of cake.
5. He wants to eat .... (packets) of cheese. He is hungry.
6. We all .... (sing) a song in class yesterday.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية.

1. My parents .... me a beautiful present last birthday.
   a. give b. giving c. gave d. gives
2. I .... a lot of water yesterday.
   a. drink b. drinks c. drank d. drinking
3. The neighbors .... a noise last night.
   a. hear b. heard c. hearing d. hears
4. My team .... a gold medal yesterday.
   a. won b. wins c. win d. doesn't win

Unit 9

1 Irregular past simple verb forms

Present	Past
fall	fell
eat	ate
throw	threw
tell	told

Present	Past
wear	wore
make	made
fly	flew
run	ran

2 The suffix"-ful" is a suffix that means "full of". "-ful" هى لاحقة تعنى "ملىء بـ".

noun	adjective
care	careful
beauty	beautiful

Pop Quiz on Language

05 min

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. That shirt has red, blue and green stripes. It's very .... (color).
2. My father always takes care of me. He is very .... (care).
3. Adam is very .... (helps). He helped me carry the bag.
4. Sara's necklace is .... (beauty). Everyone likes it.
5. This website is very .... (use). I can get a lot of information from it.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية.

1. I hurt my leg. It's very ....
   a. useful b. helpful c. painful d. careful
2. Somebody .... the window last night.
   a. break b. breaks c. don't break d. broke

3. Dad .... a new car a month ago.
a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying

4. You should be .... when you cross the road.
a. careful b. careless c. care d. cares

Unit 10

1

Modal verb for advice	Usage الاستخدام	Formation	Example مثال
should [يجب]	to say what is the right thing to do.	Subj. + should + inf.	- You should go and see the doctor.
shouldn't [لا يجب]	to say what isn't the right thing to do.	Subj. + shouldn't + inf.	- You shouldn't smoke.

2 **The prefix "un-" means** "un-" هي بادئة تعنى «غير».

Word	Opposite	Meaning
healthy	unhealthy	bad or not well
happy	unhappy	not happy[sad]

Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. You shouldn't .... [made] new friends online.
2. We should .... [keeping] our personal information secrets.
3. Children .... [should] use their phone late at night.
4. You should .... [accepting] to be friends only with people you know.
5. She should .... [told] her parents about her problems.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية.

1. I .... keep my password secret.
a. should to b. shouldn't c. should d. doesn't

2. You .... make new friends online with people you don't know.
a. shouldn't to b. shouldn't c. should d. aren't

3. I should .... my phone off at night.
a. turn b. turned c. turning d. turns

4. Don't eat too much candy. It's ....
a. healthy b. unhealthy c. good d. fast

5. I shouldn't .... my password to anyone who asks.
a. gives b. give c. gave d. giving

Unit 11

A

Prepositions حروف الجر	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
by [بواسطة]	قبل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل.	- I go to school by bus.
on [على]	قبل وسائل المواصلات عند وجود فاصل [مع وسائل المواصلات التى تستطيع أن تقف فيها] ومع كلمة [foot].	- We go to the park on foot. - I go to work on a bus.

B

need / need to	Formation	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
need	Subj. + need + noun	We use "need" when something is important or necessary to do.	- You need safe roads.
need to	Subj. + need + to + inf.		- You need to look left and right.

C

Obligation	Formation	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
must / mustn't	Subj. + must / mustn't + inf.	We use "must" for strong advice.	- We must wear seat belt in cars. - We mustn't run on roads.



Pop Quiz on Language

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He needs .... (get) up early.
2. They need to .... (bought) a bigger house.
3. I need .... (of) buy a bottle of water.
4. Sara goes to her school .... (by) foot.
5. You must .... (being) careful on roads.
6. We mustn't .... (burns) rice straw.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d. تدريب تلقائى على القواعد اللغوية.

1. When you travel .... motorbike, you wear a helmet.
   a. by b. next c. of d. at
2. Do you need to .... a doctor ?
   a. see b. sees c. seeing d. saw

Day 3



Listening & Reading Skills

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Adam goes to school by................ .
   a. train b. bus c. car d. taxi
2. Adam's favorite transportation is a................ .
   a. bus b. car c. taxi d. plane
3. Adam sometimes goes with his................ by bus.
   a. brother b. sister c. friends d. family
4. Adam and his family travel by .... on holidays.
   a. car b. taxi c. metro d. train

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

problem - empty - bus - crowded - animals

Buses are good. Sometimes they get very (1)..................., particularly after school and work, when lots of people go home. It's better when they're (2)................... and you are on the bus with one or two people. You can see a lot of the city from the (3)................... . But the (4)................... is you stop all the time!

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I'm nine years old. At my first day of school. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school. I **put on** a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined phrase "**put on**" means to ....
   a. cut b. study c. leave d. wear
2. Ali went to school with his...................... .
   a. dad b. mom c. sister d. brother

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What was Ali's uniform ?
   ....
4. Who helped Ali love his school ?
   ....

Day 4



Writing Skill

مهارة الكتابة

"The Nile"

The Nile is very important for our lives. It's the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. It helps us to drink and grow food. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

"My first day at school"

I was very nervous at my first day of school. I lived in Luxor. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

"What I did at the weekend"

Last week, I visited my grandma. She lived by the sea. We saw some old photos and sang songs, but time was short. We felt happy. We will go again soon, early September.

"How to be safe on roads"

It's important to be safe on the roads. Children are in danger on the roads. So we need a seat belt in our car. We also need to cross the road when the light is green. We need to look left and right before we cross the road.

"My favorite transportation"

I go to school on foot. When I'm late, I take the bus. I like traveling by bus around the city. We travel slowly and I see the city.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

"Your sports day"

It's our class Sports Day. It's in the school yard. It's on Tuesday. We wear T-shirts and shorts. We play lots of games and eat lots of cake.

"Pros and cons of social media"

There are a lot of pros and cons for social media. You can play games online. You can have fun. But some people can bully you when you are on social media. They can take your personal information so you should keep your password secret.

Days 5,6 &7

20 Governorates Exams

٢٠ اختبارًا من المحافظات المختلفة

تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لاحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية وتعديلات كتاب الوزارة ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

١ محافظة القاهرة — إدارة شبرا التعليمية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I remember my .... day of school.
   a. second b. last c. first d. third
2. I put on a .... T-shirt.
   a. black b. blue c. yellow d. red
3. I carried my ....
   a. book b. chair c. bottle d. backpack
4. My .... drove me to school.
   a. brother b. mom c. dad d. grandma

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People eat delicious food and .... at Eid Al-Fitr.
   a. sleep b. celebrate c. cook d. drink
2. We should be .... of our beautiful country.
   a. angry b. sad c. proud d. short
3. The .... travels through the air.
   a. ship b. metro c. taxi d. plane
4. It's unhealthy to play .... You should go outside more.
   a. computer games b. basketball c. swimming d. football

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

happy - swim - park - yogurt - delicious

When it is hot, I go out. I like to drink orange juice. It is very (1) .... My brother likes to go to the beach. I like to go to the beach, too. We (2) .... in the sea. We eat frozen (3) .... We feel very (4) .... at the end of the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

Eid happens in the first day of the 10^{th} Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ....

a. Jobs b. Eid Al-Fitr c. Christmas d. Sham El-Nessim

2. In Ramadan, many Muslims .... during the day.

a. fast b. eat c. drink d. see

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. When is Eid Al-Fitr ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Where .... [do] you go yesterday ?
2. My brother .... [win] the race yesterday.
3. I .... [have] a bad day yesterday.
4. To stay safe online, people .... [shouldn't] use strong passwords.

6 Punctuate the following.

what do people do during Ramadan

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Your favorite game"

Guiding elements : - What is the game ? - Where do you play it ?

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt is famous for its ....
   a. animals   b. books   c. history   d. desert
2. We should be proud of our ....
   a. country   b. factory   c. zoo   d. park
3. Our food is ....
   a. bad   b. wonderful   c. horrible   d. ugly
4. Egyptians are .... people.
   a. lazy   b. hospitable   c. bad   d. sad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are a lot of high .... in our city.
   a. deserts   b. buildings   c. rivers   d. seas
2. Ali is very .... He helped me.
   a. colorful   b. painful   c. helpful   d. careful
3. The Nile is the .... river.
   a. shortest   b. longest   c. tallest   d. widest
4. Kahk are delicious ....
   a. meat   b. cookies   c. sugar   d. tea

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

popular - place - winner - find - seeker

Hide and seek is an old game. Players need a wide (1) .... to play it. One player, called the (2) ...., closes his eyes and counts to ten. The seeker tries to (3) .... the other players who go to hide. The last one left is the (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend, we visited my grandparents in a village near Luxor. We went to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. My grandparents were happy to see us. We went to the mosque and said 'Eid Mubarak' to our friends. Grandma made delicious kahk with nuts. We ate a lot of kahk and drank orange juice. We played with our friends. Then, we bought some candies. It was a nice weekend.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Lat weekend, we visited my grandparents in a .... near Luxor.

   a. village b. city c. country d. hotel

2. We went to .... Eid Al-Fitr.

   a. store b. celebrate c. make d. sleep

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ....

4. What did they buy ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Grandma's village .... (is) very quiet in the past.
2. The players .... (need to) a wide place to play football.
3. It's raining. You .... (shouldn't) take your umbrella.
4. We .... (catch) a big fish last night.

6 Punctuate the following.

what makes us special

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"A birthday party"

Guiding elements : - Where did you go ?
- What did you do there ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last week, I had some homework about ....
   a. lizards b. cats c. chameleons d. dolphins
2. I logged into a .... website.
   a. school b. library c. history d. museum
3. I worked with my ....
   a. parents b. friends c. uncles d. cousins
4. Our teacher loved our ....
   a. project b. poster c. presentation d. uniform

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The River Nile has two ....
   a. branches b. forests c. deserts d. villages
2. Muslims .... during the day of Ramadan.
   a. swim b. eat c. drink d. fast
3. We use social media to .... ideas.
   a. chat b. share c. sure d. eat
4. Egyptians are .... They always welcome their visitors kindly.
   a. painful b. unkind c. scary d. hospitable

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shopping - shoe - meals - delicious - noisy

Grandpa said that his dad drove gas cars. They were very (1) .... The town had a (2) .... area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a (3) .... store on Sunday. There were some restaurants to have (4) .... there.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went to celebrate our friend Nader's birthday. We played hide and seek. Nader was the seeker and we were the players. We hid and Nader tried to find us. Nader found Mona and she became the seeker. Ali was the winner because he was the last one left. We enjoyed the picnic so much.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. .... was the winner.

a. Mona b. Nader c. Ali d. Ahmed

2. It was .... birthday.

a. Nader's b. Mona's c. Ali's d. father's

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Where did they have a picnic ?

....

4. What did they play ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Last month, we went to the beach and .... [swim] there.

2. We .... [should] bully people online.

3. We need to .... [wearing] a helmet on our bikes.

4. They didn't .... [went] to their school last week.

6 Punctuate the following.

we go to school on foot

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Guiding elements : - eggs – parks

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday, I sent an email to my ....
   a. grandma b. cousin c. friend d. sister
2. I played a game online with my friend in ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Cairo d. Giza
3. I put some .... of me on social media.
   a. games b. photos c. emails d. letters
4. I did research for my homework on my ....
   a. television b. cell phone c. tablet d. computer

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We .... Sham El-Nessim in spring.
   a. eat b. move c. read d. celebrate
2. My dad gave me a .... on my birthday.
   a. chair b. present c. player d. winner
3. Dalia created a .... to get information.
   a. research b. chat c. password d. secret
4. We can buy kahk from a ....
   a. hotel b. school c. bakery d. library

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

studied – crying – carried – asked - end

I don't forget my first day at school. I was six years old. I wasn't happy. I was (1) .... when I left my mother. The teacher (2) .... me to sit next to a boy. He was very kind. Then, we (3) .... many subjects and played games. I was happy at the (4) .... of the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

In many countries all over the world, most people celebrate the beginning of the year. It's in the first of January. People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the trees with lights, colored balls and stars.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Christmas trees represent a .... life.

   a. sad b. bad c. new d. slow

2. People decorate the trees with ....

   a. lanterns b. fruit c. stars d. cakes

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ....

4. What color are the Christmas trees ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. When did your friend .... (arrives) ?
2. We must .... (wore) seat belt in cars.
3. I love traveling with my family .... (on) plane.
4. Nora has a cold. She shouldn't .... (goes) outside.

6 Punctuate the following.

egypt is full of young people

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Sham El-Nessim"

Guiding elements : - celebrate - parks

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many people say that .... are bad for children.
   a. vegetables b. computer games c. fruits d. candies
2. Children can spend many .... on their computers and tablets.
   a. days b. hours c. weeks d. months
3. They look at the .... and they don't go outside.
   a. screen b. table c. book d. chair
4. Parents say .... computer games is not healthy for their children.
   a. carrying b. buying c. playing d. creating

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I have .... for breakfast.
   a. pens b. toys c. Ful Medames d. books
2. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
   a. capital b. town c. moon d. forest
3. Cars make air pollution. They put .... into the air.
   a. metals b. woods c. stars d. chemicals
4. When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
   a. bus b. train c. plane d. car

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

animals - clean – shortest – earth – life

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is 6,670 km long. That's like traveling to the center of the (1) .... It is very important for people's (2) .... There're many kinds of (3) .... live in the Nile. We must keep the river Nile (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We should do things to stop air pollution. I talked to my family about what we can do. We can do many things. We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartments. We use buses and trains. We can have plants in our balcony. My dad goes to work with his friend in the same car. My mom takes the bus to the work. My sister Bassma walks to school because it is near.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "How to .... ".
   a. stop air pollution b. save time
   c. go to work d. cut trees
2. Bassma's school is ....
   a. far b. old c. near d. new

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What can we do to stop air pollution ? Mention one.

....

4. How can we save energy ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. There .... (aren't) many people coming to our village in the past.
2. She went to the hospital .... (on) taxi.
3. Children shouldn't .... (drank) much coffee.
4. Hager .... (wear) a nice dress last night.

6 Punctuate the following.

egypt is famous for its history

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Transportation

Guiding elements : - taxi - travel

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. .... is a Muslim festival.
   a. Christmas b. Eid Al-Fitr c. Sham El-Nessim d. Shawwal
2. The month before Eid is called ....
   a. Shawwal b. Ramadan c. April d. March
3. In Ramadan, many Muslims .... during the day.
   a. run b. walk c. remember d. fast
4. People don't eat or drink until .... in Ramadan.
   a. morning b. sunset c. afternoon d. night

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a. desert b. forest c. river d. mountain
2. I use .... media when I go online.
   a. book b. history c. social d. local
3. My dad has a .... in his car to drive safely.
   a. chair b. helmet c. seat belt d. bike
4. Which .... is your favorite ? - Eid Al-Fitr.
   a. game b. music c. subject d. celebration

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

branches – longest - crocodile – kinds – the earth

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two (1) .... The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of (2) .... The Nile is home for different (3) .... of fish, birds and turtles. One planet's largest reptiles, the Nile (4) ...., lives in it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Mona. I am eleven years old. I live with my family in a big city in Egypt. The city is very noisy and **crowded**. Smoke and noise are everywhere, but there are lots of pretty lights. I visited my grandma last weekend. She lives in a small village. It's very quiet and clean in the village and there are lots of trees and grass. I love the village more than the city.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Mona is .... years old.
   a. eight b. ten c. five d. eleven
2. The underlined word "**crowded**" is the opposite of ....
   a. small b. empty c. full d. busy

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How is the city?

   ....

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. She .... [leave] home early yesterday.
2. What did Ahmed .... [wears]?
3. I want two .... [bottles] of cake, please.
4. I go to school .... [by] foot. It is near my house.

6 Punctuate the following.

what do people do during the festivals

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Egyptian food"

Guiding elements : - Ful Medames - basbousa

....

....

....

....

....

....

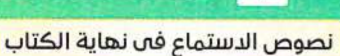
....

....

....

....

٧ محافظة الغربية — إدارة السنطة التعليمية



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Two years ago, we had a very special ....
   a. day   b. week   c. party   d. meal
2. All my family came together to ....
   a. decorate   b. celebrate   c. bake   d. study
3. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's ....
   a. kitchen   b. balcony   c. bedroom   d. garden
4. There was lots of .... : salad, meat, fish and cookies.
   a. salt   b. food   c. money   d. sugar

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I don't want anyone to know about it. It is a ....
   a. secret   b. season   c. class   d. safe
2. Many .... come to visit Egypt every year.
   a. trucks   b. roads   c. visitors   d. planes
3. I carry my .... to school.
   a. toy   b. backpack   c. bed   d. desk
4. We use computers to .... information.
   a. share   b. bully   c. cut   d. talk

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

road – celebrate – life – special – green

People decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always (1) .... The tree represents a new (2) .... People use lights, colored balls and stars to decorate the trees. Many countries (3) .... Christmas every year. Christmas is a very (4) .... day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Ahmed. I am nine years old. At my first day of school. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

I **put on** a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack.

Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Mazen. The teacher was very kind. We studied English and played games; it was fun !

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined phrase "**put on**" means to ....
   a. cut b. study c. leave d. wear
2. Ahmed went to school with his ....
   a. dad b. mom c. sister d. brother

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What was Ahmed's uniform ?

   ....

4. How was Ahmed's teacher ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I .... (am) very tired last night.
2. Egyptian monuments are .... (wonder). Many tourists like seeing these monuments.
3. You must .... (follows) road signs.
4. You shouldn't .... (pushes) your friends in the ground.

6 Punctuate the following.

we travel on water by ship

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Guiding elements : - Where do you go ? - How do you celebrate Eid Al-Fitr ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a. shortest b. longest c. slowest d. fastest
2. The Nile has two ....
   a. lakes b. hills c. branches d. farms
3. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and ....
   a. cats b. turtles c. dogs d. lions
4. One of the largest reptiles, the Nile .... , lives in it.
   a. crocodile b. penguin c. parrot d. camel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I can .... my friends in photos online.
   a. talk b. tag c. play d. match
2. A train moves on a .... It's very hot and dry.
   a. road b. rail c. sky d. river
3. About 90% of Egypt is ....
   a. desert b. sea c. oasis d. forest
4. People who write movies and stories are called ....
   a. teachers b. doctors c. players d. authors

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

famous - player - movies - desert - prizes

Egypt is famous for its rich culture. We make a lot of (1) .... and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important (2) .... And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate (3) .... , Ferial Abdelaziz. She is very (4) .... karate player.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, we had a very special party. It was my mother's birthday. My mom was 40 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. There was lots of food. I played games with my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We ran and threw a ball. We were happy. It was a special day.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. My mother was .... years old.
   a. sixty b. fifty c. forty d. eighty
2. I drank a carton of .... juice.
   a. apple b. pineapple c. guava d. orange

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. When did they have a special party?

   ....

4. Who came to celebrate?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. He .... [feel] sad yesterday because he lost his phone.
2. They .... [play] football last weekend.
3. You should .... [turning] your phone off at night.
4. They often travel .... [on] car.

6 Punctuate the following.

did you go to Damietta

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

Your first day of school

Guiding elements : - What did you wear?

- How did you feel?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. It's important to be .... online.
   a. nervous b. happy c. worried d. safe
2. You should keep your .... secret.
   a. name b. computer c. password d. tablet
3. You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
   a. accept b. wait c. hide d. call
4. You shouldn't .... your personal information.
   a. contact b. share c. protect d. understand

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We cough and feel sick after .... polluted air.
   a. watching b. drinking c. laughing d. breathing
2. Children love playing .... games.
   a. computer b. book c. reading d. pen
3. When the music stops in the musical chairs game, everyone ....
   a. runs b. stands c. reads d. sits
4. I should create a strong .... for my mobile.
   a. photo b. password c. game d. secret

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

desert – eggs – spring - favorite – musical

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in the start of (1) .... In Sham El-Nessim, we wear colorful clothes. We eat colored (2) .... and we buy presents. We play fun games like hide and seek and (3) .... chairs. It's my (4) .... festival.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting ! I logged into a website and created a password to find information. Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have **amazing** eyes and they can see all around. I need to do more research. I

want to message my friend Eman and chat with her. She knows some great websites. We need to make a presentation. We need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures. We don't copy information. We find ideas and write our own words.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The text is about ....
   a. passwords b. chameleons c. color d. friend
2. The underlined word "**amazing**" means ....
   a. bad b. ugly c. wonderful d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What do we need to find information on a website ?

   ....

4. What is special about chameleons ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Samy is thirsty. He wants a .... (piece) of water.
2. I .... (go) to the beach last year. It was fun.
3. We .... (shouldn't) keep our password secert.
4. We must .... (waits) for the green light.

6 Punctuate the following.

we travel on water by ship or boat

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18)words using the following guiding elements.

"Pros and cons of social media"

Guiding elements : - have fun - play games

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My .... Adam is 13 years old.
   a. brother　b. cousin　c. friend　d. uncle
2. He has an account on ....
   a. tablet　b. television　c. social media　d. computer
3. Adam is always .... when he is online.
   a. careful　b. worried　c. nervous　d. helpful
4. He keeps his personal information ....
   a. secret　b. public　c. easy　d. tidy

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous Egyptian .... player.
   a. runner　b. swimmer　c. footballer　d. karate
2. Siwa .... is my favorite place.
   a. River　b. Sea　c. Oasis　d. City
3. Look at the ...., you can't swim here.
   a. sign　b. park　c. letter　d. book
4. "La Tomatina" is a popular .... in Spain.
   a. food　b. card　c. lesson　d. festival

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stand – out – chairs – run - stops

In musical chairs game, players put out some (1) .... less than them. They play some music and (2) .... around the chairs. When the music (3) .... everyone sits down. The player without chair is (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of spring. We can do lots of things during this celebration. We can play in the parks, color eggs, go on a picnic, and eat fish. Sham El-Nessim is a festival for Egyptians. Egyptians get together to have fun and celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Sham El-Nessim is a celebrations of ....

a. winter b. summer c. spring d. autumn

2. We color .... during Sham El-Nessim.

a. eggs b. apples c. cakes d. candles

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. What do we eat during Sham El-Nessim ?

....

4. Why do Egyptians get together during Sham El-Nessim ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Amr is thirsty. He wants a .... [bar] of water.
2. We need to .... [looks] left and right when we cross the road.
3. You .... [shouldn't] stay at home. It is raining heavily outside.
4. Hazem helped his mom and .... [throw] the trash.

6 Punctuate the following.

we get water from the nile.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Egyptian culture"

Guiding elements : • authors • prizes

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ful Medames is a very .... dish.
   a. heavy b. old c. new d. modern
2. It is served with lots of olive oil and ....
   a. garlic b. onion c. cheese d. sugar
3. It is a traditional food in ....
   a. England b. Paris c. Egypt d. France
4. All people in Egypt like to eat ful for ....
   a. dinner b. snack c. lunch d. breakfast

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I was .... to read City Mouse and Country Mouse story. It was funny.
   a. scared b. bored c. pleased d. angry
2. Basbousa is a very .... dessert.
   a. sweet b. salty c. cold d. hot
3. I got a lot of birthday ....
   a. colors b. presents c. nuts d. books
4. I played .... with my cousins all afternoon.
   a. foods b. games c. jobs d. meals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

park – eggs – Coptic - Egyptians – fish

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after (1) .... Easter. All (2) .... celebrate Sham El-Nessim. During Sham El-Nessim, people eat dried (3) ...., green onions, and boiled eggs. During the festival, people like to paint boiled (4) .... People have picnics and spend time outside. We all like Sham El-Nessim.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. I go to school on foot. I like walking. If I'm not late, I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends. My friend Ali goes to school by car. If his father isn't in town, **he** takes the bus. He likes it because it travels slowly and he can see the city. Hassan never goes to school on foot because his house is far from the school.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....

a. Hassan b. Ahmed c. Ali d. father

2. Hassan .... goes to school on foot.

a. always b. never c. often d. usually

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How does Ahmed go to school ?

....

4. Why does Ali like the bus ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Where did the country mouse .... (lives) ?
2. Who comes to school .... (at) train ?
3. There .... (was) no cars in the past.
4. I want to eat a .... (glass) of chocolate.

6 Punctuate the following.

how can you be safe on roads

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"The Nile"

Guiding elements : - home for - branches

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Grandpa's village was very ....
   a. polluted b. noisy c. dark d. quiet
2. There were no .... in the past.
   a. children b. people c. cars d. books
3. Now, there are a lot of .... and cars.
   a. tablets b. trucks c. televisions d. pencils
4. Grandpa was eight when he buried the .... of memories.
   a. box b. bag c. packet d. bottle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. This food isn't good. It tastes ....
   a. good b. delicious c. sad d. horrible
2. We go to school on foot. We always .... to school.
   a. cycle b. walk c. fly d. drive
3. When I travel by ...., I go through air.
   a. bus b. plane c. boat d. car
4. The mice live in ....
   a. holes b. hotels c. schools d. rivers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

train – city – catch – seeds – mouse

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country (1) .... was pleased. He gave his friend grass and (2) .... The (3) .... mouse said "Thank you". The city mouse stopped eating and ran to (4) .... a train at eight.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ahmed. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights but smoke and noise are eveywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet and clean. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. We love the country rather than the city.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ahmed visits grandpa in ....
   a. spring b. winter c. summer d. fall
2. The city is always ....
   a. slow b. quiet c. noisy d. clean

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How is life in the country?

   ....

4. What does Ahmed like more, the city or the country?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I went to the park yesterday and I .... [fly] the kite.
2. Last month, we .... [celebrate] our sister's birthday.
3. We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We .... [was] very happy.
4. We should .... [turns] our phones off at night. It's healthy.

6 Punctuate the following.

what games did Ali play yesterday

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"A trip to the sea"

Guiding elements : swam – played

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Younis lived in ....
   a. Suez b. Cairo c. Aswan d. Luxor
2. He wanted to ....
   a. run b. play c. cry d. study
3. Marwan was Younis's new ....
   a. neighbor b. friend c. doctor d. teacher
4. Younis's mother was waiting him at the school ....
   a. library b. playground c. gate d. class

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Christmas .... represents new life.
   a. rice b. flower c. tree d. sea
2. .... a small present and cover it.
   a. Eat b. Wrap c. Help d. Run
3. We played hide and .... yesterday.
   a. take b. make c. seek d. sleep
4. She asks her mother a lot of questions. She is ....
   a. curious b. bad c. stupid d. dirty

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

message – found – tablet – presentation – felt

Last week, I had some homework. I worked with my friend Ramy. I sent him a (1) .... My friend did research on his (2) .... We (3) .... some information. We talked to plan the presentation. The teacher liked our (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Chameleons are interesting animals. They live in forests and deserts. They eat insects and leaves. Their eyes are amazing. They can see all around. Chameleons can change colors. They can change their skin color to the place where they are.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Chameleons are .... animals.
   a. interesting b. sad c. terrible d. ugly
2. Chameleons can change ....
   a. sand b. colors c. land d. legs

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Where do chameleons live ?

   ....

4. What do chameleons eat ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I .... [don't] sleep well yesterday, so I feel tired.
2. We travel on water .... [at] boat.
3. You should .... [eating] healthy food.
4. Why .... [do] they take photos of animals yesterday ?

6 Punctuate the following.

how many kites can you see

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"The Nile"

Guiding elements : - branches – reptiles

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last summer, Hala visited her ....
   a. uncles b. friends c. grandparents d. cousins
2. The air wasn't ....
   a. healthy b. polluted c. good d. clean
3. There were a lot of .... and green areas.
   a. plants b. cars c. trucks d. stars
4. In Hala's city, the .... covers the sky.
   a. cloud b. rain c. water d. smoke

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. My mom bakes .... for the party.
   a. cakes b. bananas c. apples d. figs
2. I go to the .... to read books for my research.
   a. shop b. museum c. library d. park
3. The train moves on a ....
   a. rail b. water c. airport d. road
4. I can .... my friends in photos online.
   a. talk b. tag c. play d. put

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

famous – karate – love – authors - do

In Egypt, we make a lot of movies and many are famous. We have (1) .... who won important prizes. And of course, we (2) .... sports. Anyone who loves (3) .... knows the name of one of very (4) .... karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The River Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. It's like traveling to the center of the earth. It travels through eleven countries. The Nile has two branches. The Nile provides Egypt with water, food, transportation, and excellent soil for growing food. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The River Nile is the .... river in the world.

   a. tallest   b. shortest   c. longest   d. smallest

2. The River Nile travels through .... countries.

   a. four   b. eleven   c. ten   d. five

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. How many branches does the Nile have ?

   ....

4. What does the Nile provide Egypt with ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. If you are not .... [care] on road, you will have an accident.
2. I need to .... [goes] to school.
3. Sama .... [wears] a beautiful dress last night.
4. She drank one .... [bottles] of water.

6 Punctuate the following.

he had a bottle of water

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Guiding elements : • festival   • spend

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I visited my .... last week.
   a. grandpa b. grandma c. grandchildren d. grandparents
2. My grandma lived by the ....
   a. sea b. lake c. Nile d. ocean
3. We sang ....
   a. plays b. films c. movies d. songs
4. We will go again soon, early ....
   a. June b. July c. September d. May

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I hurt my leg. It's ....
   a. good b. nice c. high d. painful
2. We need water to .... and grow crops.
   a. study b. drink c. read d. write
3. Shawwal starts when people see the new ....
   a. star b. moon c. sun d. sky
4. To play hide and seek, you need a .... place.
   a. small b. narrow c. short d. wide

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

food – friends – number – strong – secret

It's important to stay safe online. You should keep your password (1) .... You shouldn't tell everyone your phone (2) .... You shouldn't make new (3) .... online with people you don't know. You should use a (4) .... password. Don't bully people online.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. There are some ideas to make the air cleaner. We can try to buy from shops near our house. Children can try to walk to school. If children live far away from school, they can go by bike or they can take the bus. We can plant trees. Trees clean the air. They also make cities look pretty and we can sit by trees on a hot day!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The polluted air is ....

   a healthy   b. unhealthy   c. safe   d. good

2. Children can go by bike if they live .... away from school.

   a near   b. close   c. far   d. open

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is air pollution dangerous for us ?

   ....

4. How can we make the air cleaner ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Ali .... (play) the violin at the concert yesterday.
2. Yesterday, we .... (have) a special party.
3. Those tools are very .... (use) for fixing the door.
4. You shouldn't .... (made) noise in your class.

6 Punctuate the following.

how do you get to school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Be safe on the roads"

Guiding elements : - helmet – careful

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Doaa is having a birthday party next ....
   a. Sunday b. Friday c. Monday d. Tuesday
2. She is inviting the whole ....
   a. teachers b. family c. class d. street
3. She wants to play some .... games.
   a. party b. healthy c. public d. secret
4. She brings some .... so they can play musical chairs.
   a. cakes b. chairs c. music d. food

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Soha hurt her leg, so she went to ....
   a. desert b. hospital c. school d. zoo
2. To .... means not to eat and drink until sunset.
   a. celebrate b. fast c. play d. read
3. Playing computer games for a long time is ....
   a. healthy b. helpful c. useful d. unhealthy
4. I need to look at lots of .... and find some information.
   a. air b. friends c. websites d. clouds

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

shortest – clean – longest – important – earth

Farmers grow crops near the river. The Nile is the (1) .... river in the world. It's 6,670 km long. That's like traveling to the center of the (2) .... It's very (3) .... for people's lives. We must keep the River Nile (4) ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about "........................".

   a. Clean air b. Snow c. Air pollution d. Stars

2. In England, children go to school by ....

   a. bikes b. cars c. planes d. trains

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How do cars make air pollution ?

   ....

4. How does China try to stop air pollution ?

   ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I go to school .... (at) foot.
2. Last weekend, they .... (see) some old videos.
3. I saw two .... (mouse) in the old room.
4. When you go online, you need to be .... (care).

6 Punctuate the following.

how do you go to school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"The beach"

Guiding elements : -swam – played

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sami likes ....
   a. running   b. walking   c. swimming   d. reading
2. Emad goes to work by ....
   a. train   b. plane   c. ship   d. car
3. Ali goes to work by ....
   a. boat   b. bike   c. motorbike   d. bus
4. Eman doesn't like to be on ....
   a. water   b. land   c. street   d. ground

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. You need to look left and .... before you cross the road.
   a. right   b. good   c. green   d. black
2. Using modern devices has .... and cons.
   a. pros   b. books   c. prize   d. price
3. We all love to .... presents.
   a. drink   b. lose   c. give   d. run
4. He had a .... with bullying in class.
   a. eat   b. problem   c. phone   d. call

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tables – present – wedding – happy – baked

It was my birthday party. The party was at home. Mom [1] .... cakes for my birthday. She put sweets and juice on the [2] .... Dad gave me a [3] .... My friends came to party. We had fun. We were [4] ....

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is famous for its history. We should feel proud of our country. We should celebrate its rich culture. Egyptian people are friendly and helpful. There are many good places to visit in Egypt. In Egypt, we celebrate many festivals. Eid Al-Fitr is one of these festivals. It comes after the month of Ramadan. People bake kahk in Eid Al Fitr. Kahk are delicious cookies.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt is famous for its ....

a. celebrate b. festivals c. movies d. history

2. Egyptian people are ....

a. young b. old c. friendly d. family

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What are kahk ?

....

4. When does Eid Al-Fitr come ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Children shouldn't .... (eats) too many sweets.
2. My grandma .... (lives) in a village when she was young.
3. Ziad is very thirsty. He wants a .... (slice) of water.
4. We travel .... (at) motorbike.

6 Punctuate the following.

where did the country mouse live

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"A trip with your friend"

Guiding elements : - visit - zoo

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Egypt is a special ....
   a. country b. town c. city d. village
2. Near the .... , it is green and beautiful.
   a. sea b. lake c. Nile d. ocean
3. Our food can be described with one word : ....
   a. messy b. wonderful c. ugly d. easy
4. Our .... are famous.
   a. books b. plays c. songs d. movies

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Life in the city is ....
   a. quiet b. slow c. noisy d. angry
2. You need a green light to .... the road.
   a. cross b. run c. play d. sleep
3. The crocodile is a large ....
   a. bird b. reptile c. mountain d. building
4. Eid Al-Fitr and Sham El-Nessim are .... in Egypt.
   a. desserts b. dishes c. festivals d. cities

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

wear – desert – eggs – spring – musical

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in the start of (1) .... In Sham El-Nessim, we (2) .... colorful clothes. We eat colored (3) .... and we buy presents. We play fun games like hide and seek and (4) .... chairs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches. There're many people living **near** the Nile. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**near**" means ....

a. behind b. far c. on d. beside

2. There are many people .... near the Nile.

a. giving b. living c. feeding d. sleeping

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

4. How many branches does the Nile have ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. Nada .... [get] up at 8 o'clock yesterday. She was late for school.
2. He wants a .... [packet] of soap.
3. Last weekend, we .... [go] to Damietta.
4. You .... [shouldn't] stay safe online.

6 Punctuate the following.

we travel on water by ship or boat

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Guiding elements : - When is Eid Al-Fitr ?

- What do people do during the festival ?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Last ...., we went to visit our grandparents.
   a. month b. year c. weekend d. Sunday
2. We swam in the ....
   a. river b. lake c. pool d. sea
3. We saw lots of fish and a/an ....
   a. octopus b. elephant c. ant d. dog
4. My .... caught a fish.
   a. father b. uncle c. grandpa d. mother

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People .... Christmas trees with lights and colored balls.
   a. decorate b. throw c. read d. sleep
2. They had ice cream for ....
   a. dessert b. desert c. soup d. homework
3. Hide and seek is a .... game. All the children know it.
   a. strange b. uncomfortable c. popular d. bad
4. .... means having something different.
   a. Different b. Special c. Scary d. Boring

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

seat belt – helmet – cross – left – wear

We need to be safe on the roads. We must wait for the green light and listen for cars before we (1) .... the street. We must look right and (2) .... then we cross at the crosswalk. We need a (3) .... in our cars and a (4) .... on our bikes. We must follow road signs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers and tables. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The word " .... " in the text means your father and mother.
   a. problems b. parents c. reasons d. tablets
2. Computer games are sometimes ....
   a. cold b. hot c. good d. angry

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

....

4. How can children make friends in computer games ?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word[s] between brackets.

1. I .... [fly] a dragon kite in the kite festival last month.
2. You should .... [keeps] your room clean.
3. You need .... [of] look left and right when you cross a road.
4. Who .... [win] important prizes yesterday ?

6 Punctuate the following.

the Nile crocodile is very long

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN [18] words using the following guiding elements.

"How you celebrate Sham El-Nessim"

Guiding elements : - park – dried fish

....

....

....

....

....

....

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday was too ....
   a. cold b. hot c. rainy d. cloudy
2. I drank .... bottles of water.
   a. five b. three c. two d. four
3. My sister ate a packet of ....
   a. cookies b. chocolate c. butter d. cheese
4. I used a bar of soap to wash my .... and hands.
   a. leg b. hair c. face d. arm

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Which .... is your favorite ? – Eid Al-Fitr.
   a. game b. music c. subject d. celebration
2. There are many people .... near the Nile.
   a. feeding b. living c. giving d. making
3. We should be .... of our beautiful country.
   a. pain b. proud c. care d. cloud
4. There are many wild animals in this ....
   a. school b. river c. forest d. sea

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

party - games - musical - green - music

I'm having a party next Thursday at my house. We can play (1) .... chairs game. So, I'll play some (2) .... Please, come to my (3) .... It'll be fun! I invited all my friends. We will wear something (4) .... There will be nice games. See you then.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts and uncles came. There was lots of food : salad, meat, bread, cakes, cookies and fruit. I played with my cousins. My brother Ali ate a big slice of chocolate cake. My sister drank a glass of orange juice. We sang "Happy Birthday" to my mother. It was a special day. We were very happy.

A. **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The main idea of the text is "........................".

a. my father's birthday　　b. our picnic
c. my mom's birthday　　d. a wedding party

2. My sister drank a glass of .... juice.

a. apple　　b. banana　　c. orange　　d. mango

B. **Answer the following questions.**

3. When was the mother's birthday?

....

4. Who ate a big slice of chocolate cake?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You .... (needs) a helmet when you are on your bike.
2. We .... (should) talk to people we don't know online.
3. My mom .... (cleans) the kitchen yesterday.
4. They want to buy a .... (bar) of milk.

6 Punctuate the following.

we should use more solar energy

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

"Egyptian food"

Guiding elements : - cook　　- delicious

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

١ الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة البحيرة الأزهرية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. I remember my first day of ....
   a. hospital b. school c. park
2. I was .... years old.
   a. four b. six c. seven
3. I like staying at home with my ....
   a. family b. friends c. teachers

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

fine – watching – are – What

Ali : How [1] .... you ?
Samy : I'm [2] ....
Ali : [3] .... are you doing ?
Samy : I'm [4] .... TV.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last weekend, I went to Damietta with my family to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We felt happy. We will go again, early July.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. When did the writer go to Damietta ?
....
2. Who lived by the sea ?
....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. Last week, we went to ....
   a. Alexandria b. Sinai c. Damietta
4. My grandpa caught a ....
   a. fish b. rabbit c. octopus
5. We will come next ....
   a. May b. April c. July

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I .... a great movie last night.
   a. bought b. watched c. gave

2. Siwa .... is my favorite place.

a. River b. Sea c. Oasis

3. Adam is very .... He helped me carry the bag.

a. colorful b. helpful c. tired

4. Yesterday, I didn't .... to walk to school.

a. wants b. to want c. want

5. I bought a .... of water from the shop yesterday.

a. bar b. bottle c. packet

5 Reorder.

1. live – I – a village - in.

....

2. longest – What's – river - the ?

....

3. travel - by – I – plane.

....

4. need - roads – We – safe.

....

5. are – to – We – visitors – friendly – very.

....

٢ الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنيا الأزهرية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. The city mouse visited the country mouse in his ....

a. room b. hole c. yard

2. The country mouse was ....

a. excited b. sad c. angry

3. The city was pretty and full of ....

a. balls b. lights c. colors

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

When – party – Thursday – birthday

Ahmed : Why are you having the (1) .... ?
Mona : For my (2) ....
Ahmed : (3) .... is the party ?
Mona : It's on (4) ....

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people think that social media is bad for us because we spend too much time on it. They also believe that we are not safe online. On the other hand, some

people think that it's great and fun. Social media is a good thing, but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it. In my opinion, watching too much TV can be **useful** to learn what is going on in the world, but we should not let it waste our precious time.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. Give one reason why social media is bad for us.

....

2. Why do people think watching TV is a bad idea ?

....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. The underlined word "**useful**" means "........................".

a. bad b. harmful c. good

4. The text is mainly about ....

a. air pollution b. school subjects c. social media

5. We should be careful and stay........................ online

a. safe b. dangerous c. weak

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. We learn to be........................ on the road.

a. careful b. care c. cares d. cared

2. I carry my........................ and go to school.

a. backpack b. game c. gate d. bus

3. I go to school........................ foot.

a. on b. by c. at d. in

4. When we........................ the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

a. drink b. breathe c. hear d. eat

5. We can get........................ power from the sun.

a. wind b. water c. solar d. air

5 Reorder.

1. can – **You** – fun – have.

....

2. the – girl – **What** – doing – is ?

....

3. by – bus – goes – to – **He** – school.

....

4. should – a seat – **We** – wear – belt.

....

5. wants –juice – **She** – carton – of – a.

....

٣ الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة أسيوط الأزهرية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. .... is a Muslim festival.
   a. Eid Al-Fitr b. Sham El-Nessim c. Christmas
2. The month before Eid is called ....
   a. Ramadan b. April c. Shawwal
3. Muslims don't eat or drink until ....
   a. sunrise b. sunset c. dawn

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

use – cell – chat – message

Sara : Do you have a (1) .... phone ?
Ahmed : Yes, I (2) .... it every day.
Sara : Me, too. It's very important to (3) .... my family.
Ahmed : You can also (4) .... with your friends.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse gave his friend grass and seeds. The city mouse said, "The city is pretty and full of bright lights. We can catch a train to the city at eight." The two friends ran to the train. In the city, the smoke from cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared. He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend. The city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country where life is good for me."

A. Answer the following questions.

1. Where did the country mouse live ?

....

2. How did the country mouse and the city mouse travel to the city ?

....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. They can catch a train to the city at ....
   a. 9 b. 8 c. 12

4. The smoke from cars covered the ....

a. ships   b. stars   c. sea

5. The country mouse .... the city.

a. liked   b. didn't like   c. needed

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. Mom gave me a .... of water last night.

a. bar   b. bottle   c. packet   d. slice

2. There .... no cars in the past.

a. was   b. were   c. are   d. is

3. We travel on water by ....

a. ship   b. train   c. bus   d. taxi

4. I sent a .... to my friend to help me.

a. message   b. school   c. color   d. hospital

5. The children are so .... They will go to the Pyramids on Friday.

a. tired   b. excited   c. sad   d. bad

5 Reorder.

1. is – Nile – **How long** – the ?

....

2. games – can – **You** – play.

....

3. go – school – **I** – to – bus – by.

....

4. games – children – **Computer** – are – for – bad.

....

5. burn – straw – **Don't** – rice.

....

٤ الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الفيوم الأزهرية

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. Omar goes to school by ....

a. plane   b. car   c. bike

2. Omar's school isn't ....

a. good   b. near   c. nice

3. In the morning, the roads are ....

a. free b. busy c. big

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

What - went - last - swam

Hany: Where did you go (1)........................ weekend ?
Amr : I (2) .... to Alexandria.
Hany: (3) .... did you do there ?
Amr : I (4) .... in the sea and saw fish.

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

Yesterday, we went on a school trip. It was a nice day. First, we went to the Pyramids. We enjoyed our time there. Then, we went to the zoo. We saw a lot of animals. We had lunch there. I want to come back again.

A. Answer the following questions.

1. When did they go on a school trip ?

....

2. What did they see in the zoo ?

....

B. Choose the correct answer.

3. First, we went to the ....

a. Nile b. Zoo c. Pyramids

4. We had .... in the zoo.

a. breakfast b. dinner c. lunch

5. Yesterday, we visited the Pyramids and the ....

a. club b. zoo c. library

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. You .... to look left and right.

a. need b. needs c. needing

2. The Egyptian food is ....

a. wonder b. wonders c. wonderful

3. Maged is our .... He lives next door.

a. neighbor b. sister c. aunt

4. Abeer's dress is .... We all love it.

a. bad b. sad c. beautiful

5. The Nile .... is one of the largest reptiles.

a. crocodile b. bird c. plant

5 Reorder.

1. mouse – **The country** – was – excited.

....

2. you – **What** – did – yesterday – do ?

....

3. a bottle – drank – **I** – water – of.

....

4. a box – ground – **He** – under – buried – the.

....

5. bully – you – online – **People** – can.

....

اختبار الدمج

محافظة القاهرة إدارة حلوان التعليمية

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text.

famous – karate – love – authors

In Egypt, we make a lot of movies and many are famous. We have (1) .... who won important prizes. And of course, we (2) .... sports. Anyone who loves (3) .... knows the name of one of a very (4) .... karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The city is very busy and ....
   a. quiet b. calm c. noisy d. free
2. We used colored balls to .... our house to celebrate the birthday party.
   a. paint b. decorate c. sell d. build
3. In hide and seek game, the seeker tries to .... the other players.
   a. find b. hide c. wrap d. join
4. You need to wear a .... in your car.
   a. skirt b. helmet c. seat belt d. tie

3 Read the text and answer the questions.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very **nervous**. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants,

and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate. I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Ahmed. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined word "**nervous**" means ....
   a. happy b. worried c. excited d. hungry
2. This text is about the writer's ....
   a. wedding party b. first day of school
   c. trip to the zoo d. football game
3. At the first day of school, the writer didn't want to ....
   a. go to the zoo b. go to school
   c. drink milk d. play with his toys
4. Ahmed is the writer's ....
   a. brother b. father c. classmate d. son

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences.

1. branches – the Nile – does – **How many** – have ?
   a. How many branches does the Nile have ?
   b. How many the Nile have branches does ?
   c. How many does the Nile have branches ?
2. live – ground – the – **Mice** – under.
   a. Mice ground live the under.
   b. Mice live under the ground.
   c. Mice under the ground live.

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d.

a. I watched a match there. 1. [ ]

b. Yesterday, I went to the stadium. 2. [ ]

c. Then, I went to bed. 3. [ ]

d. After the match, I went back home. 4. [ ]



Listening Texts | نصوص الاستماع



Day 3

• **Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

Adam is my cousin. He goes to school by car. His favorite transportation is a bus. He sometimes goes with his friends by bus. Adam and his family travel by train on holidays.

(١) محافظة القاهرة إدارة شبرا التعليمية

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. My dad drove me to school.

(٢) محافظة الجيزة إدارة شمال الجيزة التعليمية

Egypt is famous for its history. We should be proud of our country. Our food is wonderful. Egyptians are hospitable people. 90% of Egypt is a desert, but we also have green lands.

(٣) محافظة الاسكندرية إدارة المنتزة ثان التعليمية

Last week, I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found a lot of information. I worked with my friends. Our teacher loved our presentation.

(٤) محافظة القليوبية إدارة العبور التعليمية

Yesterday, I sent an email to my grandma. I played a game online with my friend in Cairo. I put some photos of me on social media. I did research for my homework on my tablet.

(٥) محافظة الشرقية إدارة غرب الزقازيق التعليمية

Many people say that computer games are very bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say playing computer games is not healthy for their children.

(٦) محافظة المنوفية إدارة شبين الكوم التعليمية

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means people don't eat or drink until sunset in Ramadan.

(٧) محافظة الغربية إدارة السنطة التعليمية

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old ! All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes and cookies. We played and had fun.

(٨) محافظة الدقهلية إدارة دكرنس التعليمية

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

(٩) محافظة البحيرة إدارة النوبارية التعليمية

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

(١٠) محافظة كفر الشيخ إدارة الحامول التعليمية

My cousin Adam is 13 years old. He has an account on social media. He likes to share ideas, thoughts, and information with other people. He also likes to have fun with people. Adam is always careful when he is online. He accepts to be friends only with people he knows. He keeps his personal information secret.

(١١) محافظة دمياط إدارة الروضة التعليمية

Ful Medames is a very old dish. It is served with lots of olive oil and

garlic. It is a traditional food in Egypt. All people in Egypt like to eat ful for breakfast.

(١٢) محافظة الاسماعيلية إدارة القنطرة غرب التعليمية

Grandpa's village was very quiet. Now, there are a lot of people. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

(١٣) محافظة الفيوم إدارة إبشواى التعليمية

Younis was six years old at his first day of school. Younis lived in Aswan. Younis wore a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes for school. He wanted to cry. Younis thought that his teacher was very kind. Marwan was Younis's new friend. His mother was waiting him at the school gate.

(١٤) محافظة بنى سويف إدارة سمسطا التعليمية

Last summer, Hala visited her grandparents who lived in a small village. It was a very quiet place. The air wasn't polluted. There were a lot of plants and green areas. In the city, life is busy. In Hala's city, the smoke covers the sky.

(١٥) محافظة المنيا إدارة دير مواس التعليمية

Last week, I visited my grandma. She lived by the sea. We saw some old photos and sang songs, but time was short. We felt happy. We will go again soon, early September.

(١٦) محافظة أسيوط إدارة صدفا التعليمية

My name is Doaa. I'm having a birthday party next Friday at my house. I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games. I bring some music so we can play musical chairs.

(١٧) محافظة قنا إدارة قنا التعليمية

I'm Sami. I go to work on foot. I like walking. My friend Emad goes to work by car. Ali goes to work by bus. My sister Eman doesn't like traveling by ship. She doesn't like to be on water.

(١٨) محافظة سوهاج إدارة المراغة التعليمية

Egypt is a special country. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. Our food can be described with one word: wonderful ! We are very friendly to visitors. Our movies are famous.

(١٩) محافظة الاقصر إدارة أرمنت التعليمية

Last weekend, we went to visit our grandparents. They live by the sea. We swam in the sea. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too. My grandpa caught a fish.

(٢٠) محافظة أسوان إدارة أدفو التعليمية

Yesterday was too hot. I drank two bottles of water and one carton of juice. My sister ate a packet of cookies and drank a cup of milk. I used a bar of soap to wash my face and hands.

Sample Tests for Al-Azhar Students

• Listen and choose the correct answer

(١) الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة البحيرة الأزهرية

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I did not want to go to school.

(٢) الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة المنيا الأزهرية

One day, the city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was excited and gave his friend some food. The city mouse wanted his friend to see the city because it was pretty and full of lights.

(٣) الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة أسيوط الأزهرية

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

(٤) الإدارة المركزية لمنطقة الفيوم الأزهرية

Omar is my friend. Omar goes to school by car. Omar's school isn't near. In the morning, the roads are busy.



GUIDE

Interactive Notebook

By a group of supervisors

الصف الرابع الابتدائى الفصل الدراسى الثانى

CONNECT

DESERT

DESERT ANIM

دليل ولى الأمر

PARENTS' GUIDE

4th Primary 2023 SECOND TERM



Master your Term

الحل الأمثل لمنهجك الذي يمكنك
من التعامل مع المنهج بكل سهولة ويسر

First period — Vocabulary







المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التى يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقًا لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 4 & 5

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
city	مدينة (كبيرة)	village	قرية
building	مبنى	oasis	واحة
forest	غابة	mountain	جبل

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 6 : 9

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
environment	بيئة	fertile soil	تربة خصبة
temperate climate	مناخ معتدل	adapting	التكيف

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 10:13

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
curious	فضولى	metal box	صندوق معدنى

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 14 : 17

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
pleased = delighted	راضٍ / مسرور	mice	فئران
excited	متحمس	the country	الريف

Lesson 5 — SB Pages 18 & 19

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
gate	بوابة	backpack	حقيبة ظهر
nervous	عصبى - متوتر	put on = wear	يرتدى



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. There are many wild animals in this ....
   a. school b. forest c. river d. sea
2. The car passed through a ....
   a. gate b. school c. building d. sky
3. Humans are good at .... to different environments.
   a. growing b. adapting c. swimming d. building
4. We need .... soil to grow plants.
   a. hot b. weak c. dry d. fertile

Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التى تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 4 & 5

branch	فرع	the center of the earth	مركز الأرض
moon	قمر	reptiles	زواحف

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 6 : 9

human	بشر	too hot	حار جدًا
temperature	درجة حرارة	farmland	أرض زراعية
Arctic region	منطقة القطب الشمالى	energy	طاقة
too cold	بارد جدًا	late	متأخر

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 10:13

street	شارع	memory	ذاكرة
visitor	زائر	digging	حفر
pull out	يسحب	ground	أرض
grow up	يكبر - ينمو	bury	يدفن

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 14:17

run away	يجري بعيدًا	loud	صوت صاخب
pretty	جميل	smoke	دخان
bright light	ضوء لامع	voice	صوت بشري
noise	ضوضاء	catch	يلحق

Lessons 5 & 6 — SB Pages 18 : 20

kind	عطوف	gas cars	سيارات تعمل بالبنزين
carry	يحمل	electricity	كهرباء
stay at home	يمكث فى المنزل	shopping mall	مركز تسوق



Exercise on Extra Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. Young people are always full of ....
   a. grass b. cold c. energy d. smoke
2. Hurry up ! We'll be .... for school.
   a. low b. late c. early d. noisy
3. The Nile has two ....
   a. branches b. centers c. trees d. fish
4. Don't listen to .... music. The baby is sleeping.
   a. quiet b. loud c. low d. bright

Second period — Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية

Tense	The Present Simple Tense	The Past Simple Tense
Formation	• I, We, They, You + (inf.) • He/She/It + (inf.) + (s/es/ies)	Subj. + التصريف الثانى للفعل / inf. + (ed/d/ied)
Usage	To talk about repeated actions and habits. للحديث عن الأحداث المتكررة والعادات.	To talk about past actions. للحديث عن أحداث ماضية.
Examples	He plays football every week. Crocodiles live in the Nile.	He looked at the tree.
Key words	every (day/week/month...) usually / often / sometimes / once a week	yesterday, last ..., ... ago, in (2000) ...., in the past

2 Pronunciation قواعد النطق

Long vowels

/ eɪ /	/ i: /	/ aɪ /	/ oʊ /
rain	see	mice	know

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Yesterday, I .... to the mall after school.
   a. going b. goes c. went d. go
2. We .... not happy after losing the match yesterday.
   a. were b. was c. are d. is
3. He .... in London now.
   a. live b. lived c. lives d. living
4. Hala .... with her toys every day.
   a. plays b. played c. playing d. play
5. We .... go to school on Fridays.
   a. didn't b. aren't c. don't d. doesn't

First period Vocabulary



Unit 8



المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التي يجب أن يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقاً لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 SB Pages 24 & 25

a packet of cookies	علبة من البسكويت	a bottle of water	زجاجة من المياه
a bar of chocolate	قالب من الشيكولاتة	a slice of cake	شريحة من الكيك
a carton of juice	علبة كرتون من العصير	a piece of cheese	قطعة من الجبنة

Lesson 2 SB Pages 26 : 29

sea	بحر	trip	رحلة (قصيرة)
octopus	أخطبوط	dessert	حلوى

Lesson 3 SB Pages 30:33

Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	fast	صيام / يصوم
Muslim festival	عيد/ احتفال إسلامي	kahk	كحك
celebration	احتفال	sunset	غروب الشمس

Lesson 4 SB Pages 34 : 37

mistake	خطأ	groom	عريس
wife	زوجة	surprised	مندهش
friendly	ودود	bride	عروس
wedding	حفل زفاف	sign	لافتة

Lessons 5 & 6 SB Pages 38 : 40

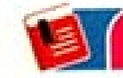
great-grandma	الجدة الكبرى	Christmas	عيد الميلاد (الكريسماس)
picnic	نزهة خلوية	birthday	عيد ميلاد



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. They're having a spring .... at the school.
   a. mistake b. festival c. fast d. lesson
2. This is a nice place for a ....
   a. picnic b. kahk c. mistake d. friendly
3. The bride wants the perfect .... dress.
   a. picnic b. wedding c. festival d. lesson
4. She usually has three .... of cheese for breakfast.
   a. bars b. bottles c. pieces d. cartons



Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التى تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 24 & 25

lemon	ليمون	carrot	جزرة
cola	مياه غازية	meat	لحم
soap	صابون	milk	لبن

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 26 : 29

deep	عميق	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
dish	طبق	meal	وجبة
frozen	مثلج	yogurt	زبادى
lovely	لذيذ / محبوب	healthy	صحى

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 30:33

celebrate	يحتفل	delicious	لذيذ
nuts	سودانى/ مكسرات	honey	عسل
Islamic month	شهر إسلامي/ هجري	mosque	مسجد

Lesson 4 SB Pages 34:37

neighbor	جار	present	هدية
arrow	سهم	wrong	خطأ
hotel	فندق	get married	يتزوج

Lessons 5 & 6 SB Pages 38 : 40

Christmas tree	شجرة عيد الميلاد (الكريسماس)	represent	يمثل / يعلن عن
garden	حديقة	salad	سلطة
had fun	استمتع	special	مميز / خاص
decorate	يزين	stars	نجوم



Exercise on Extra Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Frozen yogurt is a/an .... dessert.
   a. unhealthy b. healthy c. bad d. wrong
2. I got a lot of birthday ....
   a. colors b. presents c. nuts d. books
3. There is a lot of .... to wash our hands.
   a. cola b. meat c. soap d. juice
4. The children always enjoy .... the Christmas tree.
   a. decorating b. reading c. helping d. cutting
5. The Christmas tree .... a new life.
   a. reduces b. repeats c. represents d. asks
6. Mazen is our .... He lives next door.
   a. father b. brother c. farmer d. neighbor

Second period

Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية

Irregular past simple verbs	
Formation	There's no rule, we just have to learn these verbs and their past forms as they are.
	fly ➡ flew hear ➡ heard forget ➡ forgot win ➡ won

Regular plural nouns

Most nouns change into plural by adding (-s).	If the singular noun ends in -s , o -ss , -sh , -ch , -x or -z , add - es
table ⟶ tables	bus ⟶ buses

2 Pronunciation قواعد النطق

/ iz /	/ s /	/ z /
glasses boxes	parents fruits	mountains weddings
words that end in c, s , x , z , ss , ch , sh	words that end in p , k , t , f , gh , ph	words that end in b , d , g , m , n, ng , r , v

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. My parents .... me a beautiful present last birthday.
   a. give b. giving c. gave d. gives
2. I .... a lot of water yesterday.
   a. drink b. drinks c. drank d. drinking
3. The neighbors .... a noise last night.
   a. hear b. heard c. hearing d. hears
4. My team .... a gold medal yesterday.
   a. won b. wins c. win d. doesn't win

First period Vocabulary



Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التى يجب أن يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقًا لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 SB Pages 44 & 45

play games	يلعب ألعاب	seeker	باحث
unwrap	يزيل غلاف	hide	يختبئ
parcel	طرد (بريدي)	music	موسيقى
pass	يمرر	wrap	يغلف

Lesson 2 SB Pages 46 : 49

country	دولة	wonderful	رائع
author	مؤلف	proud	فخور
karate	رياضة الكاراتيه	region	منطقة
nature	طبيعة	culture	ثقافة
history	تاريخ	hospitable	مضياف

Lesson 3 SB Pages 50 : 53

cheese	جبن	New Year	رأس السنة (سنة جديدة)
kite	طائرة ورقية	tomatoes	طماطم

Lesson 4 SB Pages 54 : 57

picnic	نزهة خلوية	bite	يعض / قضمة
feather	ريشة	bird	طائر

Lessons 5 & 6 SB Pages 58 : 60

invitation	دعوة	information	معلومات
celebrate	يحتفل	birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Don't .... your present until your birthday.
   a. unwrap b. eat c. tidy d. buy
2. This bird has colored ....
   a. hands b. teeth c. feathers d. fingers
3. Egyptians are .... people.
   a. nervous b. unkind c. hospitable d. angry

Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التى تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 44 & 45

traditional	تقليدى	player	لاعب
winner	فائز	popular	مشهور

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 46 : 49

syrup	شراب مُحلى	celebrate	يحتفل
land	أرض	prize	جائزة
helpful	متعاون	rich	غنى / ثرى

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 50 : 53

festival	احتفال	monster	وحش
mud	طين	card	بطاقة

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 54 : 57

stood back	رجع إلى الوراء	uncomfortable	غير مريح
feel	يشعر	unusual	غير عادى

Lessons 5 & 6 — SB Pages 58 : 60

list	قائمة	invite	يدعو



Exercise on Extra Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. We were .... Mona's birthday.
   a. celebrating b. showing c. giving d. eating
2. I'm .... I have a lot of money.
   a. poor b. rich c. hungry d. sad
3. We went to the .... to play games.
   a. park b. school c. library d. hospital
4. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with ....
   a. cheese b. salt c. syrup d. kahk

Second period Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية

1 Irregular past simple verb forms

There are a lot of irregular past tense forms.

هناك الكثير من صيغ الماضى الغير منتظم.

Present	Past
fall	fell
eat	ate
throw	threw
tell	told

Present	Past
wear	wore
make	made
fly	flew
run	ran

2 suffix"-ful"

is a suffix that means "full of". "-ful هى لاحقة تعنى "ملىء بـ

noun	adjective
care	careful
beauty	beautiful

2 pronunciation النطق الصوتى

/U:/ long (oo)	/i:/ long (ee)
food	week
spoon	cheese
school	bee

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I hurt my leg. It's very ....

a. useful b. helpful c. painful d. careful

2. Somebody .... the window last night.

a. break b. breaks c. don't break d. broke

3. Dad .... a new car a month ago.

a. buy b. buys c. bought d. buying

4. You should be .... when you cross the road.

a. careful b. careless c. care d. cares

First period

Vocabulary



Unit 10



المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التى يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقًا لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 72 & 73

message	يرسل رسالة / رسالة	chat	محادثة / حوار
do research	يجرى بحث	log in/into	يسجل الدخول إلى
password	رقم سرى / كلمة مرور	chameleon	حرباء
respectful	محترم	homework	واجب منزلي

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 74 : 77

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	bully	يتنمر
online	متصل بالانترنت	device	جهاز / أداة

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 78:81

metals	معادن	pure	نقى
gold	معدن الذهب	silver	معدن الفضة
rare earth metals	معادن الأرض النادرة	copper	نحاس

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 82:85

digital footprint	بصمة رقمية	tablet	كمبيوتر لوحى
upload	يحمل علي الانترنت	type	يكتب (علي لوحة مفاتيح)

Lessons 5 & 6 — SB Pages 86:88

computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر	leaflet	نشرة/منشور



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. I sent her a .... about the information.
   a. game b. password c. message d. metal
2. Social .... is when we use computers and other devices.
   a. media b. movie c. photo d. number
3. It's scary that people can .... you online.
   a. reply b. take c. bully d. see
4. .... have amazing eyes.
   a. Tablets b. Chameleons c. Computers d. Metals

Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التى تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 72 & 73

website	موقع إلكترونى	information	معلومات
presentation	عرض تقديمى	create	ينشىء
library	مكتبة	find	يجد

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 74 : 77

computer	حاسب آلى	keep	يحافظ
thoughts	خواطر / افكار	creative	مبدع
accept	يوافق	phone number	رقم الهاتف
personal	شخصى	turn off	يغلق / يطفئ

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 78:81

conduct	يوصل	electricity	الكهرباء
ground	الأرض	precious	ثمين
vibrate	يهتز	light up	يشعل / يضئ
form	شكل / يشكل	elements	عناصر

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 82:85

internet	الإنترنت	email	بريد إلكترونى
click	ينقر / يضغط	leave	يترك / يغادر
link	رابط	post	ينشر على الإنترنت / منشور
positive	ايجابي	profile	ملف شخصي

Lessons 5 & 6 — SB Pages 86:88

spend	يقضى	outside	بالخارج
children	أطفال	parents	الوالدين

Exercise on Extra Vocabulary

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I need to look at lots of .... and find some nice pictures.
   a. words b. websites c. friends d. air
2. I should .... my personal information secret.
   a. turn b. give c. keep d. share
3. I sent a/an .... to my friend on the internet.
   a. email b. letter c. book d. juice

Second period Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية

Modal verb for advice	Usage الاستخدام	Formation	Example مثال
should (يجب)	to say what is the best thing to do. أن نقول ما هو الشيء الأفضل للقيام به.	Subj. + should + inf.	- You should go and see the doctor.
shouldn't (لا يجب)	something that is bad for you to do. شئ سيئ للقيام به.	Subj. + shouldn't + inf.	- You shouldn't smoke.

2 The prefix "un-" means not. "un-" هى بادئة تعنى «غير».

Word	Opposite	Meaning
healthy	unhealthy	bad or not well
happy	unhappy	not happy(sad)

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. I .... keep my password secret.
   a. should to   b. shouldn't   c. should   d. doesn't
2. You .... make new friends online.
   a. shouldn't to   b. shouldn't   c. should   d. aren't
3. I should .... my phone off at night.
   a. turn   b. turned   c. turning   d. turns
4. Don't eat too much candy. It's ....
   a. healthy   b. unhealthy   c. good   d. fast
5. I shouldn't .... my password to anyone who asks.
   a. gives   b. give   c. gave   d. giving

Vocabulary







المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التي يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقاً لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 — SB Pages 92 & 93

bus	أتوبيس / حافلة	plane	طائرة
train	قطار	car	سيارة
ship	سفينة	boat	قارب
airport	مطار	station	محطة

Lesson 2 — SB Pages 94 : 97

helmet	خوذة	road	طريق
seat belt	حزام أمان	sign	لافتة / علامة

Lesson 3 — SB Pages 98:101

in a hurry	في عجلة / مسرعًا	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف
crosswalk	معبر المشاة	fall over	يسقط أرضًا

Lesson 4 — SB Pages 102 : 104

chemicals	مواد كيميائية	cough	سعال (كحة)
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	burn	يحرق
solar power	طاقة شمسية	share	يشارك

Lessons 5 & 6 — SB Pages 105 : 108

pollute	يلوث	traffic	حركة المرور
rice straw	قش الأرز	lane	ممر
lightbulbs	مصابيح كهربائية	energy-saving	موفر للطاقة



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. When I travel by .... , I go through the air.
   a. train b. bus c. plane d. bike
2. We cross the road at the ....
   a. crosswalk b. crash c. crossword d. cars
3. He is hurt. I'll call for a/an ....
   a. train b. plane c. ambulance d. helmet
4. Cars make air pollution. They put .... into the air.
   a. woods b. chemicals c. metals d. stars

Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التى تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

travel	يسافر / ينتقل	rail	سكة حديدية
vehicle	مَركَبة / عربة	city	مدينة (كبيرة)
ride	يركب	transportation	وسائل المواصلات
favorite	مفضل	on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام
bike	دراجة	cross	يعبر
green light	ضوء أخضر	left	يسار
straight	خط مستقيم	right	يمين
park	يركن السيارة	safe	آمن

Second period Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية



Prepositions حروف الجر	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
by (بواسطة)	قبل وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل	- I go to school by bus.
on (على)	قبل وسائل المواصلات عند وجود فاصل (مع وسائل المواصلات التي تستطيع أن تقف فيها) ومع كلمة (foot)	- We go to the park on foot. - I go to work on a bus.

B

need / need to	Formation	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
need	Subj. + need + noun	We use "need" when something is important.	- You need safe roads.
need to	Subj. + need + to + inf.		- You need to look left and right.

2 Pronunciation قواعد النطق

/kr/	/oʊ/	/i:/	/eɪ/	/tr/
crowd	boat	clean	rain	truck

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. When you travel .... motorbike, you wear a helmet.
   a. by b. next c. of d. at
2. Do you need to .... a doctor ?
   a. see b. sees c. seeing d. saw

First period

Vocabulary



Unit 12



المفردات اللغوية الهامة (الأساسية التي يجب ان يتقنها ويحفظها الطفل طبقاً لنواتج التعلم)

Lesson 1 SB Pages 112 & 113

traffic	حركة المرور	fire	نار / حريق
pollution	تلوث	trash	قمامة
flood	فيضان	harm	يؤذى / يضر
drought	جفاف	terrible	مزعج

Lesson 2 SB Pages 114:117

energy	طاقة	hydroelectric energy	طاقة كهرومائية
landfill	مكب نفايات	recycle	يعيد تدوير
mend	يصلح	environment	البيئة

Lesson 3 SB Pages 118 : 121

solar energy	طاقة شمسية	reservoir	خزان
renewable energy	طاقة متجددة	the High Dam	السد العالى
water energy	طاقة المياه	natural gas	غاز طبيعى
wind energy	طاقة الرياح	force	قوة
oil	بترول	coal	فحم

Lesson 4 SB Pages 122 : 125

angle	زاوية	birthday	عيد ميلاد
present	هدية	shed	سقيفة / كوخ

Lessons 5 & 6 SB Pages126 : 128

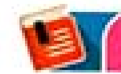
blades	ريش / شفرات	generator	مولد الكهرباء
space	مساحة / فراغ	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية



Exercise on Key Vocabulary

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. .... is too much water on the land.
   a. Flood   b. Trash   c. Fire   d. Grass
2. It's my mother's birthday. I want to give her a/an ....
   a. dam   b. angle   c. present   d. drought
3. Hydroelectricity is a clean .... energy.
   a. human   b. non-renewable   c. renewable   d. solar
4. .... is a place where people leave trash.
   a. Office   b. Factory   c. Landfill   d. School



Extra Vocabulary

المفردات اللغوية الإضافية التي تساعد الطالب على قراءة النصوص وفهم الموضوعات (إتقانها وحفظها حسب استيعاب وقدرات كل طفل)

kill	يقتل	beach clean-up	تنظيف الشاطئ
main	رئيسي / أساسي	flame	لهيب / شعلة
land	أرض	throw away	يلقي بعيدًا
toy doctor	طبيب اللعبة	repair	يصلح
plant	يزرع	toys	دُمى الأطفال
clinic	عيادة	fix	يصلح
life	حياة	notes	ملاحظات

Second period Language and Phonics



1 Language القواعد اللغوية

Can يستطيع

Formation التكوين	Usage الاستخدام	Example مثال
Subj. + can + inf.	We use "can" when we are able to do something. نستخدم "can" عندما نكون قادرين على فعل شئ ما.	We can plant more trees.

2 Pronunciation قواعد النطق

The "ion" syllable

Verb		Noun	
transport	ينقل / ينتقل	transportation	وسائل المواصلات
erode	يتآكل	erosion	تآكل
inform	يُعلم / يخبر	information	معلومات
celebrate	يحتفل	celebration	احتفال

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.**

1. We can .... the toy.
   a. fix b. fixing c. to fix d. fixes
2. We can .... trees.
   a. planting b. plants c. plant d. planted
3. We .... recycle broken things.
   a. can b. have c. am d. is
4. I .... learn many things from books.
   a. is b. has c. can d. are
5. I can .... you with your homework.
   a. helped b. helps c. help d. helping

Part **2**

★ **18 Sample Tests**

١٨ اختبار على المنهج بالكامل

★ **2 Sample Tests**

for Al-Azhar students

اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف



Sample Test 1



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. I wasn't nervous on my first day of school.		
2. I put on a green T-shirt and gray shorts.		
3. My shoes were black.		
4. My dad drove me to school.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

song – swam – dessert – caught

We went to see Grandma and Grandpa. They live by the sea. We (1) .... in the sea which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. Grandpa (2) .... a fish. We saw some old photos and sang a (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. "Special" means
2. We can recycle
3. When I travel by train,
4. In Denmark, there are

(B)

a. trash.
b. I move on a rail.
c. more bikes than people.
d. I am on the water.
e. having something that nobody else has.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Tomorrow is my sister Yara's birthday. I want to give her a present but I have no money. She really wants a bike and then I remember – we have an old bike in the shed! I love recycling and I think I'm a toy doctor. I take the bike from the shed and clean it. I remove the old metal. This takes a lot of time because it's very old and brown. I talk to my uncle and he gives me some special paint to protect the bike. Then I paint it pink, my sister's favorite color. My sister is so excited.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about .... old things.
   a. throwing   b. recycling   c. breaking   d. cutting
2. The word "excited" is the same meaning as ....
   a. angry   b. happy   c. sad   d. hungry

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What present does the writer want to give to his sister ?

....

4. Why does the writer paint the bike pink ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. near – a farmland – There – the Nile – is.

....

2. ice-cream – had – dessert – They – for.

....

3. is – special – Why – Egypt ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

which foods did Reem eat

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The month of Ramadan

Guiding words :

- fast
- help

....

....

....

Sample Test 2



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. We should be proud of our country.		
2. Egyptian food is bad.		
3. Egyptians are hospitable people.		
4. We don't have green lands in Egypt.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

sports – dancer – prizes – player

In Egypt, we make a lot of movies and many are famous. We have authors who won important (1) .... And of course, we love (2) .... Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate (3) .... , Ferial Abdelaziz.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Traffic is lots	a. in your car.
2. Plastic trash can	b. when I go online.
3. You need a seat belt	c. harm animals.
4. I'm very careful	d. of cars in one place.
	e. to eat.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My parents went to Amir's wedding party. They tried to go to the party, but they made a mistake. The party was at a big hotel. They walked into the hotel. They saw tables with nice cakes, fruits, salads and glasses of juice. They sat and talked to people.

They listened to music. When the bride and groom came into the room, my parents were surprised. The groom wasn't Amir. They were at the wrong wedding. They went to the next room and they saw Amir and Nagwa. So, they went to two weddings in one day!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Nagwa is the ....
   a. bride   b. groom   c. friend   d. teacher
2. My parents were at the .... wedding at first.
   a. right   b. wrong   c. quiet   d. noisy

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph of the text in one sentence.
   ....
4. How many weddings did the parents go to ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. Abdelaziz – player – Ferial – karate – is – a famous.
   ....
2. are – doing – ,Dalia – What – you ?
   ....
3. light – the road – to cross – You – green – need.
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

the car is too old

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding questions :

- When is Eid Al-Fitr ?
- How do we celebrate Eid Al-Fitr ?

....

....

Sample Test 3



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Last year, I had some homework.		
2. The homework was about chameleons.		
3. I created a password to log into a library website.		
4. Our teacher didn't love our presentation.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

backpack – children – kind – put on

I was nervous at my first day of school. I (1) .... a blue T-shirt and gray pants. I carried my (2) .... I walked to school with my mom. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Omar. The teacher was very (3) .... We studied math and played games; it was fun!

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. What do we eat
2. The shoes are
3. We sang
4. Don't share your

(B)

a. too big.
b. lots of songs.
c. personal information online.
d. the animals eat ?
e. at Eid Al-Fitr ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We use gold and silver in cell phones because they are excellent for conducting electricity. Other metals you can find which are less expensive are copper and aluminum. All these metals help the different parts of the cell phone to connect and function well.

We also use "rare earth" metals in cell phones – you can find them all over the world deep in the ground. They are called "rare earth" because you don't find them in a pure form,

they are mixed with other metals. Rare earth metals are very important to the cell phone too - they make the cell phone light up and vibrate. They give life to the cell phone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is mainly about the metals used in ....
   a. machines   b. cell phones   c. fridges   d. radios
2. Gold and silver are .... for conducting electricity.
   a. bad   b. slow   c. excellent   d. cheap

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
   ....
4. Where can we find "rare earth" metals ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – The room – small – too.
   ....
2. climate – like – a – People – temperate.
   ....
3. can – help – the – What – environment – things ?
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

it was a day to remember

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

How we can help the environment at home

Guiding phrases :

- switch off
- recycle garbage

....

....

....

Sample Test 4



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. I sent an email yesterday.		
2. I played a game online.		
3. I put some photos of my grandpa on social media.		
4. I researched for my bag on my tablet.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

store – idea – shopping – electricity

Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe (1) .... Today, we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like (2) .... !
I want to play football. We drove gas cars in the past, but now we have a car that uses (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. My friend made	a. is cooked very slowly.
2. Ful Medames	b. with your friend.
3. Don't bully and	c. are metals.
4. Share a car	d. a mistake.
	e. don't be a bully.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, I wasn't very happy with my friend. My friend tagged me in a photo and it showed on my social media page. When I logged on, I saw the photo. In this photo, I was buying a present for my mom for her birthday and it was a surprise! I talked to another friend and he said, 'You should change your settings (إعدادات) so you can check photos you are tagged in !'. He also showed me how to do this. Now I'm very happy because I can choose which photos appear on my page!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about "Being .... online".
   a. bully   b. healthy   c. safe   d. wrong
2. The photo was about his mum's ....
   a. page   b. photo   c. present   d. friend

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How did the writer solve his problem ?

   ....

4. What did the writer's friend do wrong ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. necklace – Sara's – is – beautiful – very.

   ....

2. the wind – get – We – energy – can – from.

   ....

3. you – safe – How – keep – online – do ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

sara's necklace is beautiful

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Our trip to the sea

Guiding words :

- octopus
- swim

....

....

....

Sample Test 5



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Children can spend many hours on their computers.		
2. Many people say that computer games are good for children.		
3. Children look at the screen of computers and tablets.		
4. It's not healthy to do homework.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

chemicals – pollution – breathe - good

Cities have many cars. Cars make air (1) .... They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see (2) .... , but they're dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we (3) .... in the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. When I travel by car,	a. old and popular game.
2. I ate too much candy,	b. before we cross the road.
3. Hide and seek is a very	c. so I felt sick.
4. We must look right and left	d. a very popular food.
	e. I am on the road.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

We should do things to stop air pollution. I talked to my family about what we can do. We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartments. We can use buses and trains more. We can have many plants on our balcony. We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. My sister, Nour walks to school because her school isn't far. We put plants in the living room and on the balcony. I'm excited!

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Nour's school is ....

a. cold b. high c. near d. far

2. The text is about how to ....

a. stop air pollution b. save money

c. go to work d. plant trees

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why do we use energy-saving lightbulbs ?

....

4. What can we do to stop air pollution? Mention two.

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. selfie – I – a funny – and – My friend – took.

....

2. the park – go – They – to – sometimes.

....

3. the – mouse – the country – Does – like – city ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

why is erosion bad for farmers

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Doing research online

Guiding questions :

1. How can you log into the library website ?
2. What information can you get ?

....

....

....

Sample Test 6



نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The High Dam can't help people.		
2. The reservoir of the High Dam is small.		
3. The High Dam helps farmers to grow crops.		
4. The High Dam controls flooding.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

buy – see – crowded – empty

Buses are good. They sometimes get very (1) ...., particularly after school and work, when lots of people go home. It's better when they're (2) .... and you are on the bus with one or two people. You can (3) .... a lot of the city from the bus. But the problem is that you stop all the time.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The metro is my favorite transportation.	a. useful for fixing our door.
2. Water energy is	b. non-renewable energy.
3. We eat colored eggs	c. in Sham El-Nessim.
4. Those tools are very	d. a renewable energy.
	e. It is fast and clean.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last week, we went to Damietta to see grandma and grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the sea, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish. Grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish ! We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert; bananas, apples and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song, but time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember. We will go again soon, early September !

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. We went to Damietta to see our ....
   a. friend b. brother c. grandparents d. mother
2. The word "lovely" means ....
   a. delicious b. big c. bad d. sad

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What did they have for the dessert ?

   ....

4. The writer and his family had a nice day. How do we know ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. special – makes – What – us ?

   ....

2. train – go – school – to – by – I.

   ....

3. in – watches – She – boxes – puts.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

noha eats a slice of pizza

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Kinis Toy Clinic

Guiding fact file :

Where is it ?	In South Korea.
What do toy doctors do ?	They repair toys for the children.

....

....

....

Sample Test 7



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. My great-grandma was 20 years old.		
2. No one came to the party.		
3. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's garden.		
4. There were lots of food in the celebration.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

desert – eggs – spring – musical

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in the start of (1) .... .We wear colorful clothes. We eat colored (2) .... in Sham El-Nessim and we buy presents. We play fun games like hide and seek and (3) .... chairs.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Noha eats a slice of	a. not enough water.
2. To link two or more things together means	b. you cross the street.
3. Flood means too	c. much water on land.
4. Be careful when	d. to connect them.
	e. pizza.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. They play pass the parcel. We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to unwrap presents. Players give the present to the next person as the music plays in the game of pass the parcel. They can play musical chairs. If you have six players, you only need five chairs. Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is "out". They take away one chair and play again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The underlined phrase "get together" means ....
   a. leave b. meet c. learn d. separate
2. In .... game, we unwrap a present.
   a. pass the parcel b. musical chairs
   c. wedding d. football

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How many chairs will you need if we have five players in a musical chairs game ?
   ....
4. How many games are there in the text ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. fix – the – We – can – toys – old.
   ....
2. and turn – can – straight – You – go – right.
   ....
3. Sham – like – El-Nessim – Do – you ?
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

she bakes cakes for weddings

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Temperate climate

Guiding questions :

1. What is a temperate climate ?
2. How do people adapt to different environments ?

....
....
....

Sample Test 8



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The Nile is home for many birds and fish.		
2. The Nile is the shortest river in the world.		
3. The Nile has two branches.		
4. The Nile crocodile is one of the longest reptiles.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

desert – temperate – sand – climate

Inuit people live in the Arctic regions. Bedouin people live in the (1) .... where the temperature can be around 50 °C. Humans can live almost anywhere, but we often look for three things : (2) ...., water and soil. People like a (3) .... climate, somewhere that's not too hot and not too cold.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Renewable energies are	a. to travel by plane.
2. You must wear	b. under the age of 30.
3. We go to the airport	c. on your bike.
4. More than half of Egyptians are	d. energies which come from nature.
	e. a seat belt in your car.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Ahmed. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun !

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The word "nervous" means ....
   a. happy b. worried c. excited d. hungry
2. This text is about ....
   a. a wedding party b. a first day of school
   c. a trip to the zoo d. a football game

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What clothes did the writer put on ?

   ....

4. How was the boy at the end of his first day of school ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. a label – puts – She – table – on – her.

   ....

2. in Egypt – branches – the Nile – does – How many – have ?

   ....

3. too – is – old – The car.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

i like to play computer games

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Chameleons

Guiding phrases :

- change color
- amazing eyes

....
....
....

Sample Test 9



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. It's important to be safe online.		
2. You should keep your password secret.		
3. You shouldn't share your personal information.		
4. Accept to be friends with people you don't know.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

links – post – road – digital

When we go online, we leave a footprint. People can see everything we do on the internet. This is called (1) .... footprint. When we go online, we type, click on (2) .... , like friends' photos, and (3) .... our own messages and photos.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Why is air	a. pollution dangerous ?
2. The word "sea"	b. had a party.
3. Last year, we	c. was hard ?
4. A toy doctor is	d. a person who repairs toys.
	e. rhymes with "see".

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into a website and created a password to find information. Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. I need to do more research. I want to message my friend Eman and chat with her. She knows some great websites. We need to make a presentation. We need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures. We don't copy information. We find ideas and write our own words.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The text is about ....

a. passwords b. chameleons c. colors d. websites

2. The word "amazing" means ....

a. bad b. ugly c. wonderful d. angry

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do we need to find information on a website ?

....

4. What is special about chameleons ?

....

---

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – near – mountain – There – a village – the.

....

2. do – throw – Why – tomatoes – people – the festival – in ?

....

3. Dam – controls – flooding – The High.

....

---

6 Punctuate the following.

they have electric buses in china.

....

---

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Eid Al-Fitr

Guiding words :

- Shawwal
- kahk

....

....

....

Sample Test 10



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Many Muslims fast during the night in Ramadan.		
2. People don't eat or drink until sunset in Ramadan.		
3. In Ramadan, people think about the past year.		
4. In Ramadan, people think about the things they want to do better.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

personal – bully – homework – night

When I am online, I am very careful. I can talk to my friends and family. I should keep my (1) .... information secret. I can play games. I can find information for my (2) .... I should turn my phone off at (3) ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. In the Arctic regions,	a. very hot.
2. Trash is something	b. we eat kahk.
3. In Eid Al-Fitr,	c. a wide place to play it.
4. Hide and seek needs	d. we want to throw away.
	e. the climate is very cold.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Salma and Amira were in the park. They heard a very unusual sound. They saw a beautiful bird. It was weak and unhappy. Its feathers were untidy. They put some water and some cheese. It looked at them for a long time then flew down and started to drink the water. It ate the cheese in three big bites. They took some pictures because they wanted to show their friends in school. After a couple of minutes, the bird shook its feathers, and gave a big "squawk".

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The word "weak" is the opposite of "..................".
   a. strong b. usual c. tidy d. beautiful
2. The text is about a ....
   a. girl b. bird c. donkey d. school

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why did the children take photos ?
   ....
4. Why did children put some water and cheese ?
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. people – are – very – Egyptian – helpful.
   ....
2. town – Our – had – shopping – a – area.
   ....
3. do – people – Eid – How – celebrate – El-Fitr ?
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

we want to have cleaner air

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Sham El-Nessim

Guiding questions :

- When is Sham El-Nessim ?
- What do people do during the festival ?

....
....
....

Sample Test 11



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. The Amazon and the Nile are very long.		
2. The Nile is the shortest river in the world.		
3. The Nile has three branches in Egypt.		
4. The Nile is very important.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

bottle – cake – bar – horrible

I had fun at the party. I drank some juice. I only had a slice of (1) .... I ate a packet of cookies and a piece of cheese. I ate a (2) .... of chocolate. After that, I was thirsty so I had a (3) .... of water.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Where do they	a. across roads.
2. We mustn't run	b. our garbage.
3. The farmer can	c. meet ?
4. We can recycle	d. the light.
	e. grow crops.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name's Rahma. My job is to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home.
The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together. This week, I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels. In China, people at weddings and celebrations give children and young people red envelopes.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. This text is about Rahma's ....

a. birthday b. games c. friends d. travels

2. People give children red .... at weddings in China.

a. games b. envelopes c. messages d. homes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Rahma do ?

....

4. How can we understand other countries ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. sounds – interesting – That – very.

....

2. look – You – green – a bit.

....

3. phone – your – on – Check.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

it isn t a good environment for people.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Different environments

Guiding words :

- oasis
- environment

....

....

....

Sample Test 12



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Grandpa's village was very quiet.		
2. There were a lot of cars in the past.		
3. Grandpa is very young now.		
4. There are a lot of trucks and cars now.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

famous – karate – hole – authors

In Egypt, we make a lot of movies and many are famous. We have (1) .... who won important prizes . And of course, we love sports. Anyone who loves (2) .... knows the name of one of very (3) .... karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. What time does the train	a. boots and long coats.
2. Erosion takes	b. sea animals.
3. The trash can kill	c. leave to Tanta ?
4. We should clean	d. our beaches.
	e. nutrients from the soil.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people think that social media is bad for us because we spend too much time on it. They also believe that we are not safe online. On the other hand, some people think that it's great and fun. Social media is a good thing, but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it. In my opinion, watching too much TV can be useful to learn what is going on in the world, but we should not let it waste our precious time.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The word "useful" means "................................" .
   a. bad b. harmful c. good d. weak
2. The text is mainly about ....
   a. air pollution b. school subjects
   c. social media d. festivals

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Give one reason why social media is good.

   ....

4. How can TV waste our time ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. well – I – feel – don't.

   ....

2. a big – mall – shopping – is – There.

   ....

3. fast – Ramadan – People – during.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

we travel on water by ship or boat

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

What you can do in your city

Guiding phrases :

- stop the air pollution
- good ideas

....

....

....

Sample Test 13



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Younis was three years old.		
2. Younis lived in Luxor.		
3. Younis wore a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes.		
4. Marwan was Younis's new friend.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

ground – pure – mixed – earth

We use "rare earth" metals in cell phones. You can find them all over the world deep in the (1) .... They are called "rare earth" because you don't find them in a (2) .... form, they're (3) .... with other metals. Rare earth metals are very important to the cell phone, too.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)		(B)
1. Search for information		a. cake.
2. He usually has a big smile		b. on the internet.
3. The seeker tries to		c. are safe.
4. I only had a slice of		d. on his face.
		e. find the hidden players.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Erosion is when water or wind picks off small pieces of earth and moves them to a new place. It's a problem because it takes the nutrients from the soil so the soil isn't good anymore. The farmer can't grow crops. Humans cause erosion when they cut down trees and put animals to feed on land for too long. Humans can help stop erosion. They can do many simple things. They can plant trees. They can move animals to different fields. They can put rocks and stones at river banks to help stop erosion.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about the dangers of ....

a. erosion | b. carbon dioxide
c. atmosphere | d. temperature

2. The phrase "picks off" means ....

a. puts | b. grows | c. takes | d. plants

B. Answer the following questions.

3. How can humans help stop erosion ?

....

4. How do humans cause erosion ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. is – climate – What – a temperate ?

....

2. follow – signs – the road – must – We.

....

3. put – on – I – seat – a new – the bike.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

Where is grandpa s village

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Be careful on the roads

Guiding questions :

- Why is it important to be safe on the roads ?
- What kind of accidents can happen on the roads ?

....

....

Sample Test 14



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. We use gold and silver in fridges.		
2. Gold and silver are excellent for conducting electricity.		
3. copper and aluminum are metals.		
4. There are no metals in cell phones.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

park – eggs – Egyptians – fish

Sham El-Nessim is celebrated every year on Easter Monday, which is the day after Easter. All (1) .... celebrate Sham El-Nessim. During Sham El-Nessim, people eat salted (2) .... , lettuce, green onions, and boiled eggs. During the festival, people like to paint boiled (3) .... People have picnics and spend time outside.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)

1. Why do they throw
2. He and his family live in
3. Chameleons have
4. A train moves on

(B)

a. a house in a small village.
b. amazing eyes.
c. a rail.
d. an airport.
e. old tomatoes ?

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. When we cycle to school, we go by ....
   a. cars   b. buses   c. bikes   d. trains
2. We cough and feel sick after .... polluted air.
   a. watching   b. drinking   c. laughing   d. breathing

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

   ....

4. How can people stop air pollution in London ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. sent – my grandma – I – to – an email.

   ....

2. everyone – the beach – helping – I'm – on.

   ....

3. mouse – live – the country – did – Where ?

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

we learn to be careful on the roads

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding fact file.

Pros and cons of watching TV

Guiding fact file :

Why isn't watching TV a good idea ?	- bad for eyes.
What are pros of watching TV ?	- a way to spend more time with family. - it keeps us informed with the news of the world.

....

....

Sample Test 15



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Ful Medames is a very old dish.		
2. It is served with lots of sugar.		
3. Archaeologists found some rice in one of the pyramids.		
4. We use olive oil and garlic to serve Ful Medames.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

drinks – region – foods – players

Egypt is a country which is famous for its history. We have wonderful (1) .... like Ful Medames. We have beautiful places like Sinai (2) .... We also have famous authors and (3) .... like Ferial Abdelaziz.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Children can spend many	a. by ship or boat.
2. We travel on water	b. air pollution.
3. Cars make	c. irrigation to people in Egypt.
4. The High Dam brings	d. rice and sugarcane.
	e. hours on their computers.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The High Dam in Aswan helps the people a lot. Its reservoir is very big. It brings irrigation to people in Egypt and Sudan. It helps the farmers to grow crops which need a lot of water, like rice and sugarcane. It controls flooding. It helps with drought because it stores water. It provides clean energy so it protects the environment. It brings many good things to Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The High Dam is in ....
   a. China   b. Egypt   c. Sudan   d. England
2. The word "stores" means ....
   a. misses   b. keeps   c. loses   d. wastes

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Why is the High Dam important ?

....

4. How does the High Dam protect the environment ?

....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. you – Sham – Do – El-Nessim – like ?

....

2. should – my phone – I – at night – turn – off.

....

3. burn – straw – Don't – rice.

....

6 Punctuate the following.

what are precious metals

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

The Nile

Guiding words :

- home
- branches

....

....

....

Sample Test 16



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Doaa is having a birthday party next Sunday.		
2. The birthday party is at Doaa's house.		
3. She is inviting the whole class.		
4. She wants to play some party games.		

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

winter – parks – spring – fish

My favorite festival is Sham El-Nessim. It is in (1) .... We eat salted (2) .... and green onions. We wear new clothes. We go to the (3) .... in Sham El-Nessim

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. The polar climate is	a. had a healthy dessert.
2. We ate the meal and	b. very sweet.
3. Basbousa is	c. write movies and stories.
4. Authors are people who	d. to feel proud of.
	e. very cold.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When we go online, we leave a footprint. People can see everything we do on the internet. This is called our "digital footprint".

When we go online, we type, click on links, like our friends' photos, and post our own messages and photos. While we do these activities, we leave a road from our digital footprint. People can see that road.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The word "type" means to .... on your computer.
   a. play b. watch c. write d. draw
2. When we use the internet, we're ....
   a. line b. offline c. online d. deadline

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

   ....

4. What activities can we do online ?

   ....

---

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. need – look – We – our planet – after – to.

   ....

2. now – are – doing – What – you ?

   ....

3. are – hospitable – Egyptians – very – people.

   ....

---

6 Punctuate the following.

i am making a presentation with Mona

....

---

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Pros of computer games

Guiding phrases :

- solve problems
- good for

....

....

....

Sample Test 17



نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. Last month, I had some homework about chameleons.		
2. I logged into a library website.		
3. My homework was about lions.		
4. I sent a message about the information to Lara.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

represent - decorate - spend - trees

In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These (1) .... are always green. The trees (2) .... new life. People (3) .... the tree with lights, colored balls, and stars.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)		(B)
1. You should have		a. I go through the air.
2. When I travel by plane,		b. flames and heat from something.
3. Fire is		c. crops in the market.
4. Farmers sells their		d. too hot.
		e. a very strong password.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Eid Al–Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.

Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. Eid Al-Fitr is on .... Shawwal.
   a. 2nd b. 10th c. 1st d. 3rd
2. The word "starts" is the same as ....
   a. finishes b. ends c. begins d. sells

B. Answer the following questions.

3. What do many Muslims do during the day of Ramadan ?
   ....
4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.
   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. was – a – hotel – The party – big – at.
   ....
2. had – shopping – Our town – a – area.
   ....
3. was – day – Yesterday – remember – a – to.
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

When is eid Al-Fitr

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Musical chairs

Guiding words :

- run
- music

....

....

....

Sample Test 18



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False).

	T	F
1. My great-grandpa was 90 years old.		
2. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden.		
3. There wasn't lots of food.		
4. My great-grandma was very happy.		

2 Read and complete the text with words in the box.

fast – better – think – Eid

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before (1) .... is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims (2) .... during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do (3) .... It is also a time to help other people.

3 Read and match (A) with (B).

(A)	(B)
1. Region is a part	a. live in the desert.
2. Bedouin people	b. I had a bottle of water.
3. I was thirsty, so	c. young people.
4. More than half of Egyptians are	d. is desert.
	e. of a country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I started going to a new school. I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages. He said I was **stupid** and no one liked me. My dad went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif. She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents.

He stopped the bullying. My parents said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online. Sherif said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now ! I know what I should do about online bullying now-keep the messages and tell an adult quickly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d.

1. The word " stupid " means ....
   a. happy   b. smart   c. not clever   d. clever
2. Sherif was .... at first.
   a. unkind   b. kind   c. helpful   d. thankful

B. Answer the following questions.

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

   ....

4. Who solved the writer's problem ?

   ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences.

1. should – my – I – secret – password – keep.

   ....

2. was – married – Who – getting ?

   ....

3. transportation – a – My favorite – is – ship.

   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

ferial Abdelaziz is a karate player

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements.

Your favorite festival

Guiding words :

- kites
- the sky

....

....

....

Test 1



For Al-Azhar Students خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف



نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. We went to visit our .... last weekend.
   (parents – cousins – grandparents)
2. We saw lots of fish and a/an ....
   (jellyfish – octopus – shark)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

games – hide – space

Ali : Do you like party (1) .... ?
Sami : Sure ! My favorite is (2) .... and seek.
Ali : Where do you play it ?
Sami : We need a wide (3) .... , so we play in the park.

C. Reading comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer.

I am Youssef. I remember my first day of school. I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun! The next day, I wasn't nervous, I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Ali. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.

1. Youssef was very .... on his first day of school.
   a. happy b. excited c. nervous
2. Youssef .... on a blue T-shirt and gray pants.
   a. cleaned b. put c. bought

3. Youssef wanted to .... at the school gate.
   a. eat b. cry c. play
4. Ali is Youssef's ....
   a. cousin b. friend c. brother
5. Youssef's teacher was very ....
   a. kind b. bad c. unkind

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. I sent a .... to my friend.
   a. message b. school c. moon
2. I go to the .... to read books for my research.
   a. cinema b. library c. garden
3. The kite .... up high in the sky last evening.
   a. fly b. flies c. flew
4. I hurt my leg. It's very ....
   a. pain b. painful c. beautiful
5. Muslims .... during the day in Ramadan.
   a. fast b. run c. sleep

E. The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer.

1. The .... brings the water to the village.
   a. farm b. canal c. trash
2. The canal was .... with trash.
   a. opened b. blocked c. crossed

F. Writing

6 Rearrange the following.

1. sent – email – I – to – an – my grandma.

   ....

2. is – matter – What – the ?

   ....

3. go to – to travel – We – the airport – by plane.

   ....

4. was – There – food – lots of.

   ....

Test 2

For Al-Azhar Students خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف



A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer.

1. We were .... Hamza's birthday.
   (playing – watching – celebrating)
2. We saw a big colorful .... (animal – bird – toy)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue.

chameleons – research – doing

Ehab : What are you (1) ...., Nour ?
Nour : I'm doing a (2) ....
Ehab : What is it about ?
Nour : It's about (3) ....

C. Reading comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer.

Air pollution is dangerous for us when we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

1. Air pollution is .... for us.
   a. good b. safe c. dangerous
2. Cities have many ....
   a. schools b. trees c. cars
3. We can't see the ....
   a. cars b. chemicals c. children

4. .... to school stops the air pollution.
   a. Driving b. Flying c. Cycling
5. When we breathe the polluted air, we ....
   a. cough b. play c. run

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer.

1. .... means not enough water on the land.
   a. Flood b. Rain c. Drought
2. Plastic trash can .... the animals and birds.
   a. help b. harm c. protect
3. You .... keep your password secret.
   a. should b. shouldn't c. can't
4. Yesterday, my dad .... me to school.
   a. drove b. driving c. drives
5. I research .... some information online.
   a. in b. with c. for

E. The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer.

1. Dalia lives in a ....
   a. town b. village c. city
2. Some villagers started to grow ....
   a. wheat b. cotton c. potatoes

F. Writing

6 Rearrange the following.

1. have – Do – safe – roads – we ?

   ....

2. in – hurry – a – He – was .

   ....

3. is – important – High Dam – Why – the ?

   ....

4. game – needs – Which – only – people ?

   ....

Part 3

Listening Texts

نصوص الاستماع

Sample Test (1)

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. My dad drove me to school.

Sample Test (2)

Egypt is famous for its history. We should be proud of our country. Our food is wonderful. Egyptians are hospitable people. 90% of Egypt is a desert, but we also have green lands.

Sample Test (3)

Last week, I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found a lot of information. I worked with my friend. Our teacher loved our presentation.

Sample Test (4)

Yesterday, I sent an email to my grandma. I played a game online with my friend in Cairo. I put some photos of me on social media. I researched for my homework on my tablet.

Sample Test (5)

Many people say that computer games are very bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say playing computer games is not healthy for their children.

Sample Test (6)

The High Dam in Egypt helps the people a lot. Its reservoir is very big. It brings irrigation to people in Egypt and Sudan. It helps the farmers to grow crops which need a lot of water, like rice and sugarcane. It controls flooding.

Sample Test (7)

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old ! All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's garden. There were lots of food; salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes and cookies. We played and had fun.

Sample Test (8)

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It's about 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds and turtles. One of the longest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it.

Sample Test (9)

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Sample Test (10)

In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think

about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better.

Sample Test (11)

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. It's very important. The Nile has two branches in Egypt.

Sample Test (12)

Grandpa's village was very quiet. Now, there is a lot of people. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa is very old.

Sample Test (13)

Younis was six years old at his first day of school. Younis lived in Aswan. Younis wore a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes for school. He wanted to cry. Younis thought that his teacher was very kind. Marwan was Younis's new friend.

Sample Test (14)

We use gold and silver in cell phones because they are excellent for conducting electricity. We use other metals like copper and aluminum. All these metals help the different parts of the cell phone to connect and function well.

Sample Test (15)

Ful Medames is a very old dish. It is served with lots of olive oil and garlic. Archaeologists found some ful medames in one of the pyramids. It was thousands of years old!

Sample Test (16)

My name is Doaa. I'm having a birthday party next Friday at my house. I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games. I bring some music so we can play musical chairs.

Sample Test (17)

Last week, I had some homework about chameleons. I logged into a library website and created a password. I found information. I worked with my friend, Lara. I sent her a message about the information.

Sample Test (18)

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old!

All my family had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food. Our great-grandma was very happy.

Al-Azhar Tests

Test 1

Last weekend, we went to visit our grandparents. They live by the sea. We swam in the sea. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too. My grandpa caught a fish.

Test 2

My friends and I were in the park last week. We were celebrating Hamza's birthday. Suddenly, we heard a very unusual sound. We looked up into a tree and saw a big colorful bird.

It was weak and unhappy.